



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

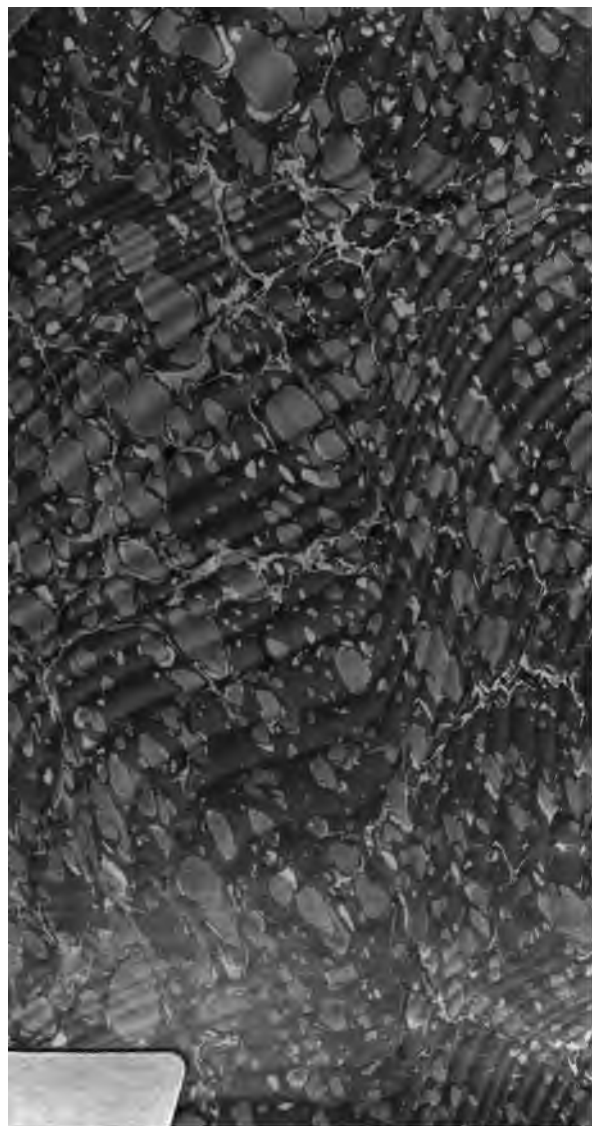
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





sure
je
dat-
a
vros
pour
cant
de
no
r de
an

ak-
Hol-

to of
the
f my
riour
uly,
N.

LO-

on to
above

ON,

usetta,
annon-
23rd,
arconi-
were
own of
by stay
a half.
KAWA.

of
ne

**BASKISH IN HOLLAND, PORTUGAL, AND
October 15, SWITZERLAND. 1915.**

To the Editor of the "Oxford Chronicle."

SIR, The friends of the Baskish language, to revive its old English name, the French "Basque" not having been used in England before the 19th Century, will find the following three notes addressed to me interesting, as characteristic of the unfavourable circumstances under which its study is carried on.

1. Stadt-Bibliothek, Bern, 31 Août, 1915. Monsieur, Je vous remercie de votre carte que je viens de recevoir. Malheureusement notre budget ne nous permet que les achats absolument nécessaires. Grâce à la maudite guerre nos recettes ont subi une forte diminution. Vous voyez que, quoique nous soyons heureux de jouir de la paix, nous souffrons quand même de la guerre. Veuillez agréer, monsieur, mes compliments distingués.—
W. F. VON MUEHLINEN.

That Library possesses a copy of the Baskish New Testament of 1771. Its existence was made known to Basco-philos by Mr. W. J. Van Eys, who himself possessed a copy, and who published in 1893, in English, his "Outlines of Basque Grammar," which is of some use to beginners.

2. Alameda, San Joao do Estoril, Portugal, 22 Sept., 1915. Dear Sir,—I have received from the Oxford University Press, and am most grateful for, a copy of your Synopsis of Leicarpaga's New Testament. I am a true, though ignorant, Basco-phil, and have lived in the Basque Country half my life. Your name has long been familiar, as many years ago I used often to see Mr. Webster at Sarre. Many of your notes I have found most interesting. (Cabe (p. 325 n.) I have always connected with cavus, hollow, and gabe, night (a hollow without light ?), the gaves, etc. Hargia as equalling month-light was quite new to me. I only knew of the picturesque "light of the dead," due to the effect of tombstones seen by moonlight. I have recently come upon some curious references to the Basque language in Portuguese authors of the 16th and later centuries. They seem to have considered it quite unfit to be written! I have written to Professor Fitzmaurice-Kelly suggesting a review for the Modern Languages Review, but he may have sent the book to a more competent critic. Yours sincerely, AUBREY F. E. BELL.

It is to be noted that this gentleman, who is a correspondent of "The Morning Post," has given to his house a name which in Baskish means The House of the Winds.

3. Bibliothèques der Rijks.—Universiteit te Leiden, Leiden, le 2e Octobre, 1915. Monsieur.—Si vous voulez bien prier votre éditeur ou libraire de m'envoyer un exemplaire de votre Synopsis, je lui enverrai le prix de 30 shillings par mandat-poste. Monsieur Van Eys à San Rémo nous a légué toute sa splendide collection d'anciens livres basques. Une partie est déjà arrivé ici, mais pour le reste il faut attendre, parceque maintenant l'envoi de ces livres ne peut se faire sans trop de péril. Veuillez, Monsieur, agréer l'expression de mes sentiments bien distingués.—Le Directeur de la Bibliothèque de l'Université à Leiden, S. G. DE VRIES.

The Library at Leiden also possesses the Baskish Testamentu Berria of 1671. May both Hol-

land and Switzerland escape the mournful fate of Belgium and Luxemburg! I am grateful to the above writers for their respectful reception of my treatise, or scraps of paper, about the behaviour of the Baskish Verb.—I remain, sir, yours truly,

EDWARD S. DODGSON.

9, Kingston Road, Oxford,
6th October, 1915.

THE TRAVELS OF A JAPANESE PHILOLOGIST.

To the Editor of the "Oxford Chronicle."

SIR,—The following note is a happy addition to the letters which you published under the above heading on October 1st.

F. S. DODGSON.

354, Harvard Street, Cambridge, Massachusetts, U.S.A., Sept. 28, 1915. Your card of Penmaenmawr received. I arrived here safely on the 23rd. We had to shift our course, as we got a marconigram to the effect that German submarines were ahead of us. This is the most English town of America, and I am beginning to enjoy my stay here, which will be for about a month and a half. Address as above.—Yours sincerely, S. ICHIKAWA.

~~Added~~ BASQUE PHILOLOGY.* 15, 1915.

Mr. Dodgson's new volume is a continuation of his laudacious and important work on the Basque verb. We say continuation advisedly, for he promises us another volume on the remaining portions of Leizarraga's New Testament, as well as what every linguistic student has long been hoping he will publish, "an analytical index to the whole

of Leizarraga's verb." Few of us have time or inclination to become Basque scholars, but every scientific student of language desires to obtain accurate information about what is from a philological point of view one of the most interesting languages in the world.

And Mr. Dodgson is right in holding that Leizarraga's New Testament is the indispensable bed-rock of Basque philology. It is not, indeed, the oldest literary monument of the Basques. Apart from the discourse of Panurge in Rabelais (1542), the earliest printed example of the language are the poems of Dechepare published in 1545. But Leizarraga's New Testament of 1571 is the next printed Basque book; and both its contents and its philological character have made it a classic. If we are to unravel the mysteries of the Basque verb, we must start from the forms of Leizarraga.

The Basque verb is unlike any other verb in the world. Practically there are but two verbs, the verbs of existence and possession, but each of those has a bewildering infinity of forms. There are not only different forms for addressing different classes of persons, as is also the case in Japanese and many other languages, but there are different forms for the various personal pronouns, both subjective and objective, which can be used with the verb. These different forms have been traced to the incorporation of the pronouns in a complex, which has become a single word through phonetic decay, and of which the French "je-vous-aime" is an incipient example. When we add to this the various forms assumed by the gerundives, which in our Indo-European grammar we should call verbs, it will be seen that Basque well deserves its title of "The Impossible."

Mr. Dodgson's work has been a labour of love, and it is well that it should be so, for scientific work which appeals only to a few is not likely to be remunerative. Even the publication of his results has not been always financially easy. The recent volume covers a large space of ground—John's Gospel, The Acts, the Letters to the

Romans, the Corinthians, and St. Titos St. James and St. Peter, and the Ap Every verbal form occurring in these been quoted and analysed, and the paining it given in full. At the end of t Mr. Dodgson has added some useful ind increase the value and usefulness of the has further added some interesting a one of them being a letter in which he h out the existence in Leizarraga's New of metrical lines, the measure of which to one used by his predecessor, Dechepe.

*! *did not suggest this impossibility.*

In one of his notes Mr. Dodgson sug the Basque word for "nine," *bederatsi*, the numeral *bat*, "one." In this he is u ly right.* There are many languages "nine" is "one minus ten," and in the tion of *bederatsi* we must see an old word f He also points out the existence of no thirty feminine forms in that part of Testament which is analysed in the pr ume; but why does he use the Germa "Baskish"?

A. H. §

* *Keys to the Basque Verb in Leizarraga's Testament.* By E. S. Dodgson. Oxford University Press, 1915. 30s.

BASKISH ETYMOLOGIES.

To the Editor of the "Oxford Chronicle"
 Sir.—Although I am much obliged to Dr for his remarks on my "Synopsis" which ap in the "Oxford Chronicle" last Friday, regret that he disapproves of my reviving English name of *Heuskara*; for "Baskish" called in the 17th century; and then ab cuense or *Vascuense*, by its Spanish nam Latin *Vasconense*; but not by its French "Basque," before the 19th. "Basque" is inconvenience, that it means in France "Baskish" and "Bask-man," and, if it be the plural, the confusion is obvious, althou true that there is not really one Baskish at all, but a very great number of dials that common denominator. It is cu "British subject," and deserves the s all British subjects, because firstly,

on the eastern side of the Pyrenees were ruled by the Kings of England from the 12th to the 15th century, and secondly, the oldest existing grammar and vocabulary of the language, at least of its north-western dialect, was, if not written for, at least imported for Sir Thomas Browne, a graduate of Broadgates Hall, now Pembroke College, in Oxford, and lies awaiting Zeppekins in the British Museum. Unfortunately Dr. Sayce defends "the impossible" in saying that the end of *bederatzki*, meaning "nine," is an old word for "ten." There is no other word, extractable even from compounds, for "ten" than *hamar*, *amar*, and that may possibly be a relative of Greek and Zend *háma*, "together," or of a West African word for a "hundred." The Indo-European names for the number 9 look as if it was once regarded as a new one. I will another day, if you have space enough, lay before your readers a few explanations which seem preferable. The ancients counted both by their fingers and by pebbles, and I think the Baskish for "nine" is a child's word, taken from one or other of their modes of reckoning; but it is difficult to say whether it meant "segregation" or "unity." Old words often present themselves in very new-fangled or very tattered garments.—Yours truly, *Oct 20, 1915.*

EDWARD S. DODGSON.

October 20, 1915.

APOSTOL AND EPISTOL.

The Editor of the "Oxford Chronicle."—The spelling of the English language is a matter of universal importance and interest. Simplicity, based on sound and history, must be the principle of the reforms which are evidently demanded by reason and experience. "Apostle" and "Epistle" are words borrowed from the Roman Church, respectively through the French "Apostre" and "Epistre," which are corruptions of Latin "Apostolo" the first, and Latin "Epistola" the second, and both of them were originally Greek. Now Greek is a language which has never died out, which is of growing practicality wherever there is a Greek church, a Greek ship, a Greek Consulate, and to which Europe owes her culture and her science. Like Welsh, it is older than English, and still equally modern. In Welsh we find "Apostol" and "Epistol" in general use to this day. In honour of Greek and Welsh, then, it would be convenient to adopt this spelling for our comparatively unstirred, but far more extended, language. That way of writing these early Christian words should harmonize with the correctly-derived adjectives "Apostolic" and "Epistolary." To "Apostles" and "Epistlers" we owe no allegiance. The termination "ile" is an intolerable hindrance to the mination, and very hard to pronounce, while little "long" is equally short. rue to literary history, and quite euphonic.—I remain, Sir, yours untriflingly,
August 27, EDWARD S. DODGSON.

Central Hotel, Aberystwyth,
August 21st, 1915.

GLAMOUR.

To the Editor of the "Oxford Chronicle."

SIR,—Is it certain, as the latest dictionaries affirm, that "glamour" represents "grammar," regarded as a sort of magical spell, as if all grammarians were bewitching and enchanting? May not the word be independent of "gramarye" and French "grimoire," and represent Latin "clamore"? There is, by-the-bye, no document to show that French "clamour" stands for Latin "clamorem," unless it be held that ablatives in *re* come from accusatives in *rem*, through the fall of *m* final. In examining ancient languages we must be contented with words as we find them, and note the difference between them, though we cannot explain it. When "clamorem" existed, "clamore" also existed. But, when prepositions assumed the predominance, it was the ablative that was picked out to carry on the business of the word, as "clamore" in the living Tuscan language shews. The "glamour" of such a city of Oxford, since Jack the Chartist of 1215 was one of her sons, comes from the clamour of admiration, the long murmuring of surprise, and praise, and applause which its evergreen, natural beauty, set off by its ever-growing architectural adornment and inspiration, and fastening as by a kind of spiders web the minds of successive sets of inhabitants. Littré quotes as an example of "clameur" in the sense of "delight," the following from Amyot: "Et alors se leva une clameur de joye que le pople jetta si haulte, qu'elle fut entendue jusques en la mer." The clamour of indignation at the most barbarous and sinful destruction of such a building as the Cathedral of Reims shews how great was the love for it, its glamour, while it existed, full of art, history, and beauty. The Oxford Dictionary quotes "glam" as a variety of "clam," and "glam" in the sense of a merry noise. They do not seem to favour the derivation from "grammar," which moreover does not seem to have undergone such a strange change of sense in any Neo-Latin language. Preferable to "grammar" as the mother of the word would seem to be "l'amour" gutturally pronounced, as if by northern people with bad colds, and meaning ideal, darling, delight, and then the sentiments that such an object of thought inspires. Reims était l'amour des architectes, des historiens, des peintres, des photographes, des poètes, des Chrétiens.

EDWARD S. DODGSON

August 3rd, 1915.



This article was reprinted on Nov: 29, in The Lincolnsheare Echo, at Lincoln.

**"ENGLISHES" AND "SCHOOL-MADAMS"
IN THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.**

To the Editor of the "Oxford Chronicle."

SIR.—The Dictionary of National Biography commemorates William Walker (1623-1684), as a native of Lincoln, and a Bachelor of Divinity of Trinity College in Cambridge. "Some Improvements to the Art of Teaching, Especially in the First Grounding of a Young Scholar in Grammar-Learning: shewing A short, sure, and easy Way to bring a Scholar to Variety, and Elegancy in Writing Latin. Written for the Help and Ease of all School-Masters and Ushers of Schools, and for the Use and Profit of all Young Scholars. The Ninth Edition, very much Corrected. By William Walker, B.D. Author of the Treatise of Idioms, English Examples, Rhetorick, and Logick. Fundamento tota domus nititur. &c. London: Printed by A. Wilde, for A. Bettesworth, and J. Batley, both in Pater-Noster-Row. MDCCXXX." exists in the Bodleian Library; but not the other editions. The British Museum possesses only the fifth, 1693, which alone is recorded in the D.N.B. It is dedicated, in Latin, to Sir Stephen Fox, Founder of the Public School of Farley, in Wiltshire, as Walker was Master of the Public School of Grantham, founded by Dr. Richard Fox, Bishop of Winchester. Although Walker died in 1684, yet his signature occurs at the end of "The Preface to the Reader" in the edition of 1730, in which we read: "Whereof the calling of this Work now to a Ninth Edition may be an evidence too bright in it self to need a Sun-Beam to be brought in for Illustration of it." In that Preface he says, "under their ignorant and injudicious petty School-Masters and School-Madams; whose Reformation were well worth the Inspection of gravest Authority"; etc. The "School-Madams" have certainly escaped the inspection of our Word-bookers. So also has his use of the term "Englishes," in the sense of "Exercises in the English Language." In the said Preface we find, "you have together three-score and seven new English Dialogues, compos'd of the Englishes of those two Collections of Latin Phrases out of Hermes Anglo-Latinus," etc. Also on p. 119 he says: "This is easily shewn him, but by composing three or four Englishes (Epistles or the like) of some pretty Length," and in "A summary" at the end of the book: "Englishes for Translating to be contriv'd suitable to the Grammar Rules. Examples of such Englishes in the first Conco"

Offered to the University of Oxford, as
studies the Art of Teaching, by H. D.
on his Birthday, this 19th of November,
regretting the loss of eight and fifty ye.

His own English is not quite classical in some
places. I have selected here but two of his "ob-
servables." The two pages before the last contain
a list of "Books printed for J. Batley, at the
Dove in Pater-Noster-Row"; and the last those
printed for A. Bettsworth, ibidem.

EDWARD S. DODGSON.

November 15th, 1915. Nov: 19

2

Some IMPROVEMENTS
TO THE
Art of Teaching,
Especially in the First Grounding of a
Young SCHOLAR
IN
Grammar-Learning:

SHEWING

A short, sure, and easy WAY to bring a
SCHOLAR to Variety, and Elegancy in
Writing LATIN.

Written for the Help and Ease of all
School-Masters, and Ushers of SCHOOLS,
and for the Use and Profit of all Young
Scholars.

The Ninth Edition, very much Corrected.

By WILLIAM WALKER, B. D.
Author of the Treatise of Idioms, English
Examples, Rhetorick, and Logick.

Fundamenta tota domus nititur. Cic.

L O N D O N:

Printed by A. Wilde, for A. Bettefworth
and J. Batley, both in Pater-Noster-Row.
M DCC XXX.

22/15 5017/1191

Sept 1875

Y. from the

Cochran



Wm

Joseph
Dobson

Ed.

John John

John Wilson

Writing

~~and~~

~~Joseph~~

Sept 11/75

Eximio Integritatis & Honoris Viro,

Domino *Stephano Foxo,*

EQUITI AURATO, &c.

Scholæ Publicæ *FARLEIENSIS*

Wm In Comitatu *WILTONIÆ* *Beaver*

FUNDATORI,

Book HANC 1775/1775
Scholasticæ Institutionis,

Puerorumque docendi Artis Substra-
ctionem, (tanquam Gratiitudinis Aram,
Benevolentiaeq; Monumentum)

GULIELMUS WALKER,

Scholæ Publicæ *Wintoniæ*

In Comitatu *LINCOLNIAE,*

A Reverendo olim Præsule,

Domino *Richardo Foxo,*

WINTONIENSI Episcopo,

Structæ & Dotatæ,

MAGISTER, Dicat, Consecra

18. 18. 18. 18.



Her Honour

Her Honour



Her Honour

Her

Her

Her

William Parsons to receive
Book 1779.



William Parsons
THE

PREFACE

TO THE BIBLE

READER.

etc etc

Courteous READER,



EACHING of a Scholar,
is much like the building
of a ~~House~~; in both there
must be a *Foundation* be-
fore there can be any *Su-
perstructure*; and accordingly
as the Foundation is well, or ill laid,
so will the Superstructure be well, or ill
Built. As great Care therefore there
ought to be taken in the grounding of

The PREFACE.

Scholars, as in the *founding* of Houses, nay, a greater: For if I may speak my *Experience*, who now have Years anow on my Back to warrant my taking that Word into my Mouth, this I have found (and who indeed finds not the same?) that where a child is at first rightly and thoroughly grounded, the rest of the Work goes on with Readiness, with Ease, with Speed, and with Assurance; so where he is ill grounded, all falls out contrarywise: much Labour, and much Patience of the Master, and much Diligence and Industry of the Scholar, will hardly at last, if ever, be able to rescue him from the mischievous Consequences of a previous ill *grounding*. The first Seasoning sticks long by the Vessel: And he will not without Difficulty learn at last to do right, who hath been principled at first to do wrong. So that *Timotheus*, the Musick-Master, seems to me to have been much in the right of it, when demanding double Pay for one that had been initiated into that Art under another Master, he gave this for the Reason of it, because he
was

The PREFACE.

was to be at double Pains, the one of unteaching him what he had learn'd wrong, and the other of teaching him that which he should learn right. Nay, so powerful is ill Habit, when once it hath got hold, and so difficult to be eradicated, where it hath taken deep Root, that I have found it much harder to unteach the Wrong, than teach the Right. Great Care therefore ought to be taken by *Patrons of Schools* in the Choice of those Persons to whom the Scholar's first *Grounding-Work* must be committed; and good Conscience ought to be us'd by those Persons, who take upon them the doing of that Work, lest through Want of Ability for, or Integrity in, the Discharge of that Duty, they do irreparable Damage unto those who are committed to their Charge. And the Consideration of this hath made me look so far back into, and take such Pains about the right *grounding of a Latin Grammar-Scholar*. And I would to God some Body else would look yet farther back into, and take some Pains about the right *grounding even of an*

The PREFACE.

English Accidence-Scholar; yea, of Primar, A, B, C, and Horn-Book Scholars: For generally from, and in the learning of the very first *Rudiments*, and *Elements of Literature*, in the very reading and spelling, and pronouncing of *Words* and *Syllables*, all is out of Order, and *Children* are either not taught, or wrong taught, the very *Pronunciation of their Letters*, Constitution of *Syllables*, and Composition of *Words*; and that ill *Teaching* hath a potent *Domination* and a malignant *Influence* upon all their future *Learning*, some being very difficultly, and some never at all freed from Captivity to that ill Habit of *reading, spelling, and pronouncing*, which they were first principled in, and inur'd unto, under their ignorant and injudicious *petit School-Masters* and *School-Madams*; whose Reformation were well worth the Inspection of *gravest Authority*; that so our noble Language, towards whose Completion all the *best* and the *learnedest* of *antient* or *modern Tongues* have been *liberal Contributors*, though now debas'd and discredited by the
ill

The PREFACE.

ill *Teaching* of it, might at length be *reform'd* and *refin'd*, and brought by a good *Institution*, to that *Perfection* which it is capable of; and which once attain'd, I know none that would much excel it.

But to return to that which I digress'd from: Having spent many, or rather most of the best Years of my Life, even the very Flower and Prime of my Days in the Exercise of Teaching *Scholars*, and that in several both *Publick* and *Private* Schools; and having in that Time travell'd much, to find out by what Means and Methods I might improve, to any considerable Degree of Advancement, *The Art of Teaching*; and especially in that Part of it which I discern'd to be most necessary to be well minded, and yet found of all other to be most neglected, (I know not whether through the Ignorance or Idleness of some, even too many, pretending *Teachers*) which is the very first grounding of a *Scholar*, and laying the *Foundation* of all his future Attainments, whether of *Learning* or *Honour*; and having by search-
ing

The PREFACE.

ing found out something conducive to that End, and having seen the Usefulness thereof in the *Experimenting* of it, upon such as I have taught, to the end I might save others somewhat of the Labour which that Search had cost me, and help them forward in that so difficult a *Work*, and yet so necessary to be carefully attended unto by all conscientious Persons who take upon themselves the Calling of being *Teachers of Children* (a Calling every Way deserving to be honour'd with as great Respect, as it is too often treated with Contempt, by such as understand neither the Skill requir'd to it, nor the Pains taken in it, nor the Benefits reap'd from it, by the whole Church and Kingdom, the Glories whereof do owe their first *Foundation* of all their after *high Superstructions of Honour and Grandeur* to it.) I did some Years ago throw into these Papers, those Advices and Counsels to the industrious *Teacher*, and those Helps and Furtherances to the studious *Learner*, which if diligently perus'd and pursu'd, would, I was well assur'd of it, by the Blessing
of

The PREFACE.

of God, very much ease the Trouble of the One, and not a little promote the profiting of the Other; so as that the One should follow his *Teaching* with Delight, and the other proceed in his *Profit*, and both come off, from their several Employments, with Reputation and Credit: Whereof the calling of this Work now to a *Ninth Edition* may be an Evidence too bright in it self to need a Sun-Beam to be brought in for Illustration of it.

And now touching the last Edition, it is necessary that I acquaint you, that it brought with it both something *less*, and something *more* than the former did.

First, *Something less*. For, having gone through the whole *Latin Syntaxis*, fitting *English Examples* to the Rules of it, after the Manner of that *Specimen* which I gave of such a Design in the former Editions of this Work; and finding it grown too bulky and disproportionable to the rest of this Book, to go along with it, and indeed big
enough

The PREFACE.

enough to be a *Book of it self*, as well for that Reason, as also to make Room for other Additions, whereof you have Part now, and may have more hereafter, I resolv'd it so should be. And so you have by that so much the *less*. But then again, to compensate that Defalcation, you have here,

Secondly, *Something more*. For besides the many several *Additions* up and down the *Book*, you have together *threescore* and *seven new English Dialogues*, compos'd of the *Englisbes* of those two *Collections of Latin Phrases* out of *Hermes Anglo-Latinus*, and *Goodwin's Roman Antiquities*, design'd, and done, to shew the Use of *Latin Phrases*, and to teach the Child, by Practice in *Translating*, how to use 'em, than which I know nothing that with more Certainty and greater Ease both for Master and Scholar, nor with greater Speed, can bring a Child to write proper, elegant, and Man-like, or rather *Roman-like Latin*. To which I may add, that the Matter of most of *the latter Set of Dialogues* (that out of
Goodwin's

The PREFACE.

Goodwin's Antiquities) is such, as will fill the Child's Head, whilst he is doing something else, and thinking of no such Thing, with very much of the *Roman* Customs, and so enable him with greater Ease to be Reader of the best of *Roman* Authors, and especially of *Cicero*, the Flower and Glory of all *Roman* Orators and Philosophers too. And the more willing am I to promote this Kind of Literature, because I find not only ancient *Authors*, but modern *Writers* also, delighting to embroider their Language, and embellish their Style, with Phrases and Forms of Speech, alluding to those Customs, as comprizing within them, like Diamonds enchas'd in Beazils of Gold, much at once both of Beauty and Worth, in small Weight and little Compass.

And now, *Courteous* READER, begging your Pardon for that Freedom of Language which I have used in this *Preface*, proceeding from a candid Breast, and an uninvincible Soul, whose principal Aim in all his private Labours

The P R E F A C E.

hours is next the *Glory of God*, at Publick Good; and desiring your Prayers for God's Blessing on this Work, that it may turn to his Honour, His Church's Good, the Advantage of all who either as *Teachers* or *Learners* shall be concern'd therein, without farther Trouble to my self or you, I end this Discourse, and rest,

Your Servant,

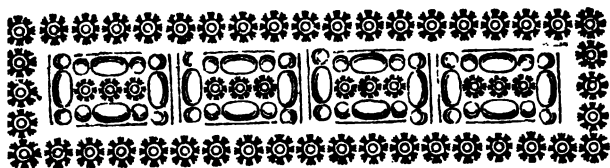
In our one Great Lord

And Master, Christ Jesus,

W. WALKER.



T H E



T H E
A R T of T E A C H I N G
I M P R O V ' D,

In the Grounding of a Young
Scholar in the Latin T O N G U E.



C H A P. I.

Of the Forming of Nouns.



Intending to write, not upon every Thing that is to be perform'd by the Teacher, or pre-scrib'd to the Learner of the Latin Tongue, but only on some particular Observeables, conducing to the grounding of a young Scholar therein, I begin with that which is both most necessary and most useful, the declining, or forming of Nouns, touching which, the Directions to the Teacher are as follow.

First, In the learning of the Declensions of Nouns, make your Scholars to attend unto, and be expert in the English Signs of every distinct Case, by making them together with the Latin Nouns which they decline, to give the English thus, Nom. *Muse,* a Song, Ger

2 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

Gen. *Musa*, of a Song, Dat. *Musa*, to a Song, Acc. *Musam*, a. or the Song, &c. This initiates them in the Practice of rendering Latin into English.

Secondly, Use them not only to give the English for the Latin, but also, *vice versa*, the Latin for the English, thus, Nom. a Song, *Musa*, Gen. of a Song, *Musæ*, Dat. to a Song, *Musæ*, &c. This initiates them in the Skill of turning English into Latin.

Thirdly, Practise them in declining forwards and backwards, (i. e. Latin before English, and English before Latin) Substantives and Adjectives, first of like Termination in all Cases: as, *Musa jucunda*: Then of unlike Termination, first in fewer Cases: as, *dies splendet*: Then in more: as, *Poeta doctus*, *lapis pretiosus*, *figus pulchra*, &c. and so far as may be done in all Declensions. This Exercise, as being directly the Practice of all the second Concord, will be of very great Use to them in making of Latin.

N. B. It will be of great Use to the Purposes aforesaid, to put them to the forming of English Substantives, first alone without Adjectives, thus: Nom. a House, Gen. of a House, &c. then together with Adjectives, thus: Nom. a fair House, Gen. of a fair House, &c.

Fourthly, When they are perfect in the Terminations of the Cases of every Declension severally, then exercise them in giving the Terminations of every Case throughout all the Declensions together, after this Manner;

This Termination of all the Cases in every Declension.

The Gen. Case Sing. of the first Declension ends in *a*, as *Musæ*; of the second in *i*, as *Magistri*; of the third in *is*, as *Lapidis*; of the fourth in *us*, as *Manus*; of the fifth in *ei*, as *Diei*.

The Dat. Case Sing. of the first Declension ends in *a*, as *Musæ*: of the second in *e*, as *Magistro*; of the third in *i*, as *Lapidi*; of the fourth in *ui*, as *manui*; of the fifth in *ei*, as *Diei*.

The Acc. Case Sing. of the first Declension ends in *am*, as *Musam*; of the second in *um*, as *Magistrum*; of the third in *em*, as *Lapidem*; or in *im*, as *Sitim*, or in both *em* and *im*, as *Febrem* and *Febrim*; of the fourth in *um*, as *Manum*; of the fifth in *em*, as *Diem*.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 3

The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in some Nouns in the 2d Declension ending in *us* or *ius*, whose Vocative respectively ends in *e* or *i*; as *Nom. Dominus*, *Voc. Domine*, *Nom. Filius*, *Voc. Fili*.

The ablative Case Singular of the first Declension ends in *a*, as *Musa*; of the 2d in *e*, as, *Magistro*; of the 3d in *e*, as *Lapide*; or in *i*, as *Siti*, or in both *e* and *i*, as *Febre* and *Febri*; of the fourth in *u*, as *Manu*, of the 5th in *e*, as *Die*.

The Nominative Case Plural of the first Declension ends in *a*, as *Musae*; of the 2d in *i*, as *Magistri*; of the 3d in *es*, as *Lapides*; of the 4th in *us*, as *Manus*; of the 5th in *es*, as *Dies*.

The Geritive Case Plural of the 1st Declension ends in *arum*, as *Musarum*; of the 2d in *orum*, as *Magistorum*; of the 3d in *um*, as *Lapidum*; or in *ium*, as *Febrium*; of the fourth in *uum*, as *Manuum*; of the 5th in *erum*, as *Dierum*.

The Dative Case plural of the first Declension ends in *is*, as *Musis*; or in *abus*, as *Mulabus*, or in both *is*, and *abus*, as *Filiis* and *Filiabus*; of the 2d in *is*, as *Magistris*; of the 3d in *ibus*, as *Lapidibus*; of the 4th either in *ibus*, as *Manibus*, or in *ubus*, as *Artubus*, or in both *ibus* and *ubus*, as *Veribus* and *Verubus*; of the 5th in *eus* as *Diebus*.

The Accusative Case Plural of the 1st Declension ends in *as*, as *Musas*; of the 2d in *os*, as *Magistros*; of the 3d in *es*, as *Lapides*; of the 4th in *us*, as *Manus*; of the 5th in *es*, as *Dies*.

The Vocative Case Plural is like the Nom and the Ablative is like the Dative, in all Declensions.

Note. That all Nouns of the Neuter Gender, of what Declension soever, and in what Termination soever, have their Nom. Accus. and Voc. alike in both Numbers; and in the Plural Number do end all in *a*, except *ambo* and *duo*, and Words undeclinable, as *centum*, *viginti*, *mille*, *tot*, &c.

Of the various Terminations of Cases in several Declensions

In the Declensions it is visible that there be several Cases which admit of a Variety of Terminations; now forasmuch as it may be useful to Learners, to know

4 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

know something of Certainty in that Variety, I shall here, for that Cause, give the Reader some Account thereof.

The Genitive Singul. of the 1st Declension is found to have ended sometimes in *as*, in Imitation of the Greeks: as, *Pater-familias, Filius-Familias*. Thence, *Meretrix & mater familias erit una in domo*. Ter. ad. 4. 7. *Dux ipse vias*. Enn. *Mercurius, cumque eo filius Latondis*. Liv. Andron. *Filii terras*. Næv. *Nec auras nec sonitus memor*. Virg. And sometimes in *ai*, as *aulai pissai*: thence, *Dives opum, dives pissai vestis & auri*. Virg. *Nomen dare vobis volo Commædai*. Plaut. Pœn. Prol.

Of the Dative and Ablative Plural of the first Declension.

Some Nouns of the first Declension do end in *abus*, in the Dative and Ablative Case Plural.

The Examples hereof producible, would, if doubted, clearly evince it. The Ground of adding this Termination in *abus* to that in *is*, was to distinguish the Words that are so declin'd from other Words of a near Signification, whose Dative and Ablative Plural ends in *is*.

The Words that have *abus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural, are *Filia, nata, Dea, liberta, equa, serva, mula, asina, socia, anima, conserva*. Of which *mula* and *liberta* are hardly, if ever, read in any other Termination but *abus*; the rest are found to have both *is* and *abus*.

Justin. l. 7. hath *Adhibitis in convivium suum filiis, & uxoribus, & filiabus*. Plaut. Stich. Ac 4. *Sed ego ibo intro, & gratulabor vestrum adventum filiis*. So Pœn. 4. 5. 3. 9. *Salve, Hanno, insperatissime mihi tuisque filiis*. for *filiabus*. Cic. pro Cornel. *Ab Jove Optimo, Maximo, ceterisque Diis, Deabusque omnibus, opem & auxilium petamus*. Varro de R. R. l. 3. c. 16. (speaking of the Muses, whose Birds the Bees are said to be) saith, *His diis Heliconæ atque Olympum attribuerunt homines*. Palladius (speaking of the Month of March) saith, *Hoc mense saginati ac passi ante admissarii generosi equabus admittendi sunt*. Varro de R. R. l. 2. c. 1. speaking of the Mares in Lusitania, which are said

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 5

to conceive by the Wind, saith, *Sed ex his equis qui nati puli non plus triennium vivunt.* See more in *Voss. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 4. *Alvar. Instit. Gram.* p. 196. *Voss. Etymolog. Lat.* p. 31. *Rhen. Gram. Lat.* p. 47. *Hayne's Lat. Gram.* p. 15. *Ram. Lat. Gram.* l. 1. c. 7 *Farnab. Lat. Gram.* p. 7.

Of the Vocative Case of the second Declension.

Nouns of the 2d Declension. ending in *us*, in the Nominative Case, do end in *e* in the Vocative.

This is too apparent to be doubted: Even in other Terminations, anciently, the Vocative Case was distinguish'd from the Nominative: Whence *puere* for *puer* is cited by *Priscian*, l. 7. out of *Cacilius* and *Afranius*, *Age, age puere, duce me ad patrios fines decoratum opipare* And *O puere. sine me prospicere mihi*

But whether any Nouns ending in *us* in the Nom. do also end in *us* in the Vocative, may be a Doubt.

In *Sidonius*, *carm.* 22, we may read—*Naiadas istie Nereidum chorus alme doce* In *Liv* l. 1. *An U. C.* is read, *Audi, Jupiter, audi Pater patre's populi Albani, audi tu populus Albanus.* But in these and the like Examples, either there is a *Gracism*, (for in the *Attick* Dialect the Nom. and Voc. end both alike) or an Enallage of the Case, the Nom. being put for the Voc. whereof there be many Examples both in the Substantives and Adjectives, which yet are not therefore said to have a Vocative in *e* and in *us*: As *Virg. Æn.* 1. *Adsit letitia Bacchus dator*—*Perf. Sat.* 1. *Vos ô patricius sanguis*—Inasmuch, that even *Deus* in the Vocative Case is an *Atticism*: As *Θεός* in *Greek* is us'd for *Θεὸς*, which is read also in Ecclesiastical Writers. *Tertul.* l. 1. adv. *Marcion.* *Gratus esses Odee heretice, si esses in dispositionem creatoris.* So *Prudent*, in *Hamartigenia.* *O Dee cuncti parens, animæ dator, O Dee Christe.* So that the proper Terminations of Nouns in *us* of the 2d Declension in their Voc. is *e*; the other in *us* is figurative: Only *vulgus* hath both *e* and *us*, but *e* as a Masculine, *us* as a Neuter, unless the Vocative in *us* be remaining of the old declining of this Word of the 4th Declension; whence *Charismus* cites, from *Varro*, *A vulgu condemnaretur.*

The

6 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

The same may be said touching those in *ius* with a Vowel, or simple *i* before *us*, whether proper or common, which now end in *i* in the Voc. Case; their proper Termination is *e*, which being cut off by an *Apocope*, so they come to end in *i*. As *fluvie* and *so- cie* is read, so was also *filie*, *Genie*, *Antonie*, *Virgilie*, and *Tabellaris*, *Cic.* of which the *e* being by an *Apocope* cut off, there is now remaining in Use only *filii*, *Geni*, &c. But personal Adjectives still retain the proper Termination in *e*: as *Cynthius*, *Cynthiae*; *Delias*, *Delie*, &c. See *Voss. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 5.

As for those that end in *ius*, with a Consonant *j*, or a Diphthong *ai* or *ei* before *us*, such as *Cajus*, *Majus*, *Pompejus* *Vultejus*, their Termination is *i*.

This Voc. is form'd of the Nom. by putting away *us*, and either resolving the Diphthong into its Vowels, or turning the Consonant *j* into *i* Vowel; Unless any, supposing it to be a Diphthong that in these Words precedes *us*, will have the Voc Case to end in that Diphthong, as indeed *Pompei* and *Vultei* of two Syllables may be read. *Hor. Od.* 7. l. 2. *Pompeii meorum prime sodalium.* And *Ep.* 7. l. 1. *Durus arit, Vultei, nimis attentusque videris.* However now Use resolves the Diphthong. Hence *Martial*, l. 10. *Ep.* 16. *Si donare vocas promittere, nec dare, Cai.* And *Auson de Mensib.* *Maja Dea, an major, Mai te fecerit atas, Ambigo.* See *Voss. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 5 & 20.

Of the Accusative Singular of the 3d Declension.

Of the Accusative Case Singular of the 3d Declension the ordinary Termination is *em*; yet there are some that end both in *em* and *im*.

These end only in *im*: *Vis*, *ravis*, *scis*, *charybdis*, *tussis*, *mephitis*, *canabim*, *magadaris*, *amissis*, *præsepis*, *syris*, *opis*, *pelvis*, *buris*, *sinapis*, *cucumis*, *Leucaspis*, *securis*, *Albis*, *Fabaris*, *Batis*, *Tamais*, *Tigris*, *Araris*, *Atheisti*, *Ligeris*, *Tiberis*, and *Tibris*. So *Halys* hath *Halym* and *Halyn*.

These end both in *em* and *im*: *Aqualis*, *catti*, *turris*, *restis*, *navis*, *sementis*, *puppis*, *bipennis*, *febris*, *clavis*.

But in these *Febris*, *navis* *aqualis*, and *clavis*, *em* is the more usual Termination; as is also *im* in these three

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 7

three puppis, ressis, and turris, to which may be added strigilis.

This is reckoned by *Danasius* amongst them that have, and is acknowledg'd by *Vossius* to have had *em* as well as *im*. *Danes. Schol. p. 47. Voss. de Analog. l. 2. p. 301.*

Of the Ablative Case Singular of the 3d Declension.

Of the Ablative Case Singular of the third Declension *e*, is the ordinary and regular Termination, yet there are some that end in *i*, and some that have both *e* and *i* in the Ablative Case.

Nouns ending only in *i* in their Ablative Singular.

Of Nouns that make their Ablative in *i* only, there are these Sorts.

1. Neuters in *al*, increasing long in the Genitive Case, have only *i* in their Ablative, as *Animal*, Gen. *Animalis*, Abl. *Animali*

Yet *hec Sal* hath *Sal*; but that may be the Abl of *hic Sal*, which is far the more usual, besides that the Penultima of it is short.

2. Neuters in *ar*, if their last Syllable but one in their Gen. Case be by Nature long, do in their Abl. only end in *i*, as, *Calcar*, Gen. *Calcaris*, Abl. *Calcar*. But if the last Syllable but one of their Gen. Case be either short, as *hepar*, Gen. *hepatis*; or but long by Position, as *far*, Gen. *farris*, then the Abl. ends in *e*, as *hepate*, *farre*.

Yet Poets sometimes form an Abl. in *e*, of Nouns producing their last Syllable save one: as *Virg. in Cullice—si nitor auri Sub laqueare domus animum non tangit avarum*.

3. Declinable Neuter Appellatives in *e*, have their Abl. ending in *i*: as *cubile*, Abl. *cubili*; so *aplustre*, Abl. *aplustri*.

Gausape is read in the Abl. Case, but that is because *gausape* in the Nom. is an undeclinable Word. Hence *Plin. l. 8. c. 48. Nam tunica laticlavi in modum gausape sexi nunc primum incipit*; who a little before had used the same Word in the Nom. *Antiquis enim torus è stramento erat, qualiter etiam nunc in castris gausape*. Or if it be the Abl. Case here also, yet in that of *Perf* 4.
31.

8 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

Sat. it is not, *Tu cum maxillis balanatum gnasape pectus*
 So *præsepe* in the Abl. is from the undeclinable *præsepe*
 in the Nom. *Ovid* hath *mare* in the Abl. Case, *l. 5.*
Trist. El. 2. Exiguum pleno de mare demat aqua. And
de Pont. l. 4. El. 6. Euxino de mare verlet iter. So *Plant.*
Nam si à mare abstinuisssem, as some Copies read it. It
 should be very sparingly, if at all us'd. *Retē* is read
 in the Abl. but that is from the old Nom. *retis*. These
 proper Neuters in *e* are said to have *e* in the Abl. *viz.*
Præneste, Care, Bibracte, Nepete, Reate, Soracte. See
Voss. de Analog. l. 2. c. 11. But *Danæsius* thinks them
 not to appertain to the present Consideration, as be-
 ing undeclinable Words; as *Alvar.* also saith, *Gram.*
Instit. p. 211. tho' *Soracte* may come of *Soractis*; for
Plin. hath *Sacrificio annuo, quod fit ad montem Soractem*,
l. 7. v. 2. See *Danæs. Schol. l. 1. c. 13.*

4. Adjectives in *is* and *er*, having their Neuters in
 the Nom. Case ending in *e*, do in their Abl. end in *i*:
 as, Nom. *fortis*, *forte*, Abl. *forti*. So Nom. *acer*, *acro*,
 Abl. *acri*.

Hither refer Names of Months. *Aprilis Aprili*, *De-*
cember Decembri, as being in their Nature Adjectives.
 Hither refer also *memor memori*, and *immemor immemo-*
ri, as coming from *memoris immemoris*. Yet *Ovid* hath
 us'd *caleste* and *bimestro* in the Abl. Case. See *Alvar. p.*
211. Danæs. Schol. l. 1. c. 13. and *Voss. de Analog. l. 2.*
c. 11 which last, out of *Charisius* cites in the Abl. Case,
 (from *Pomponius*) *humile rege*, and *incolume illo* and
cum contubernale pugnavi; and from *Cic. Quo stante &*
incolume, and *aliquo eccellente & nobile viro*; from *Ne-*
pos, Virgine Vestale; and from *Salust. Agreste*.

But proper Names, deriv'd of Adjectives in *is*,
 have *e* in their Ablative.

So *Martial l. 7. Ep. 23. Cum Juvenale meo* — *Cic.*
pro Planc. Confiteor summa in Laterense ornamenta esse.
 So *Annalis, Cerealis, Vitalis, Natalis, Nobilis, Celeris,*
Apollinaris, See *Voss. de Analog. l. 2. c. 11.*

Affinis, rivalis, familiaris, contubernalis, popularis, so-
dalis, edilis, annalis, biremis, natalis, and *bipennis*, have
 their Ablatives properly in *i*, as being originally Ad-
 jectives; tho' again being us'd Substantively, they
 have

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 9

have sometimes an Abl. in *e*, *Volucris* the Substantive hath *e*, the Adjective *i*; *Radis* the Substantive hath *e*, the Adjective *i*. See *Danes* and *Voss. loc. sup. cit.*

5. Words ending only in *im* in the Acc. Case, end only in *i* in their Abl. Case: as Acc. *vim*. Abl. *vi*. So Acc. *ravim*, Abl. *ravi*

Yet *Liv.* hath *Superato Bate amne*, from *Batim*. *Bath.* 2. 3. de Conf. *Phil. Carm.* 12. hath *longa site perditus*, from *sitim*; but by Poetical License, as saith *Marmellus*, *Perf. Sat.* 5. hath *Tibi torta cannabe fulto*, *Canna fit in transto*, from *cannabim*.

Words of a Greek Original increasing in the Gen. Case, and having two Terminations in the Acc. one in *em* and another in *im*, (as *Thetis* Gen. *Thetidos*, Acc. *Thetidem* and *Thetim*) rather have *e* than *i*, (as *Thetide* rather than *Theti*. Yet *Plant. Epid.* 1. 1. hath *Theti* in the Abl. *Tum ille prognatus Theti*, &c.) So *Daphnide*, not *Daphni*, &c. because the Abl. follows the Dat. (not the Acc.) which in Greek Words are the same, the Dative standing for both.

Arare in *Cas.* 1. 1. *Bel. Gal.* is not from *Araris*, which makes *Arari*; but from *Arar*, which he in the same Book useth. *Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Eduorum in Rhodanum insluit.*

Vossius to those that end in *i* only adds *canalis* and *strigilis* l. 2. de Analog. c. 11. p. 297, proving their Termination from *Quintil. Plin. Hor.* and adding as his Reason, *Quid mirum, quando Accusativum, uti ostensum per im efferunt?* Yet afterwards (see c. 12. p. 302) having from *Hor.* and *Cic* prov'd, that there is *nave* and *navi*, as *navem* and *navim*, he adds, *Etiam ut strigilem & strigilim dixere, sic strigile & strigili*; citing for *strigile* *Plin. Secund.* out of *Charis.* as *Hor.* for *strigili*. I suppose he means that *strigili* is now only in Use, tho' *strigile* was formerly us'd; or that it may be more safely us'd, as indeed he explicates himself, p. 303, saying, *Interim tutius strigili per i usurpatur.*

Nouns ending both in e and i in their Ablative Singular.

Of Nouns that have *e* and *i* in their Abl. Case, there are these Sorts

X. Sub.

12 The ART of Teaching improv'd;

adis conspicio. Ib. 3. 4. Promerui, ut mihi omnes mortalis debeat agere gratias. Plant. Pan. 5. 5. Efferte fastis.

Touching which it is exceeding difficult and tedious, if possible, to give certain Rules. Authors following rather the Judgment of the Sound by their Ear, than by any Rule. See *Gell. l. 13. c. 19.* Yet *Priscian* attempts it, and gives four Canons about it, repeated by *Possius de Anal. c. 19.* and *Danvsius Schol. p. 55, viz.* That they end in *is*.

1. Whose Genitive is like their Nominative, as *omnis* and *navis*.

2. Which are only Plurals, as *manes* and *tres*.

3. Whose Nominative Singular ends in *er*, and Ablative in *i*, as *acer* and *imber*.

4. Which end in *us* or *rs*, as *mons* and *pars*.

Let the particular Words be well mark'd, as they are met with. Such as these in *is*.

*Ardentis, aureis, seretis,
Forensis, vireis, quales, tres, &c.*

And these in *is*,

*Acris, adis, anguis, bidentis,
Manis, omnis, mortalis, parentis,
Celeris, dulcis, fontis, pluris,
Salubris, litis, with compluris,
Tris, tenacis, urbis, imbris,
Summatis, partis, & Decembris, &c.*

Of the Nominative and Accusative Plural of the third Declension in the Neuter Gender.

The Nominative and Accusative Plural of the Third Declension, in the Neuter Gender, end sometimes in *a*, and sometimes in *ia*.

They end in *a*, whose Abl. Sing. ends only in *e*, as *capita* of *capite*, *onera* of *onere*, *gausapa* of *gausape*; so *hospita* of *hospite*, *paupera*, of *hospite*, *hospite*, *paupere*.

They end in *ia*, whose Abl. Sing. ends only in *i*, as *animalia* of *animali*, *fortia* of *forti*; or else in *e* and *i*, as *felicia* of *felice vel felici*; so *locupletia*, *divitia*, from *locupletis vel locuplet*, *divite vel diviti*.

Yet

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 13.

Yet from this Rule there be some *Exceptions*.

1. *Vetus* makes only *vetera*, and *uber ubera*, tho' they have *i* as well as *e* in their Abl. Sing.

2. *Bicorper*, *tricorper*, *unicolor*, and *versicolor*, have only *a* in the Nom. Plur. though they have *i* in their Abl. Sing.

This Termination in *a* comes from a Termination in *us* in the Nom. Sing. *bicorporus*, *versicolorus*, &c.

3. *Comparatives* have only *a* in their Nom. Plur. tho' they have both *e* and *i* in their Abl. Sing. as *maiora*, *minora*.

The Ablative of these in *e* being the more usual, they follow that Termination.

Yet *plus* hath *plura* and *pluria*, and thence are *com-plura* and *compluria*.

Aplustre, whose Abl. is *aplustri*, is also said to have both *aplustra* and *aplustria*; but *aplustra* comes not of *aplustre*, but of *aplustrum* anciently used. See *Voss. de Analog. l. 2. c. 13. Danesf. Schol. p. 52.*

Of the Gen. Case Plur. of the Third Declension.

The *Genitive Case Plural* of the *Third Declension* endeth generally in *um*, as *Lapidum*.

Yet there are sundry Words, and Kinds of Words, that do end in *ium*, for which there are these Rules:

Rule I. Such as have *i*, or both *e* and *i*, in the Abl. Sing. have *ium* in their Gen. Plur. as *Turris*, *turri*, *turrium*. *Animal*, *animali*, *animalium*. *Fortis* and *forte*, *forti*, *fortium*: So *felix*, *felice vel felici*, *felicitium*. *Imber*, *imbre & imbri*, *imbrium*. *Prudens*, *pruden's & prudenti*, *prudentium*. *Concors*, *concorde & concordi*, *concordium*.

So *Gentiles* in *as*, as *Aprinās*, *Fidenās*, *Capenās*; *nostrās*, *vestrās*, and, like them, *optimās* and *summās*, which from an old Nom. in *tis* form an Abl. in *ti*, and thence a Gen. Plur. in *tium*, as *Arpinatium*, *nostrantium*, *optimatium*, &c.

Yet from this Rule there are *Exceptions*.

1. Except. All *Comparatives* have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um*, as *maior* and *maius*, *maiorum*; except *plus plurius*, and *compluria complurium*.

14 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

Yet Pliny preferreth *complurum* before *complurium*, (as Vossius saith from Charisius) against the Use of the Ancients.

2 Except. Words ending in *sex*, compounded of *facio*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um*, as *artifex*, *artificum*, *opifex opificum*, *carnifex carnificum*.

These, when taken Adjectively, have their Abl. in *e* and *i*; yet their Gen. Plur. ends only in *um*, probably that their Genitive Cases might not be confounded with *artificium*, *opificium*, &c. Substantives Singular of the Neuter Gender.

3 Except. These particular Words in their Genitive Plural end in *um*, *memor*, *immemor*, *inops*, *uber*, *compos*, *impos*, *impuber*, *puber*, *dives*, *degener*, *congener*, *bicorpor*, *vetus*, *strigilis*, *mugilis*, *tricorpor*.

Vigilum is of *vigil* the Substantive, whose Abl. Sing. is *vigila*. Of *vigili*, the Abl. of *vigil* the Adjective is rather form'd *vigilium*. See Voss. de Analog. l. 2. c. 14. p. 312.

Rule II. Substantives of two or more Syllables, ending with two Consonants, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*, as *cohort* *cohortium*, *parens* *parentium*. *Dos est magna parentium virtus*. Hor. lib. 2. Od. 24.

Likewise many Adjectives used Substantively, as *serpens* *serpentium*, *bidens* *bidentium*; so *infans* *infantium*, *adolescens* *adulescentium*, *rudens* *rudantium*, which taken Substantively, have their Abl. in *e*.

Yet from these Rules there are Exceptions.

1 Except. These particular Words, *calebs*, *consors*, *hyems*, *judex*, *senex*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um*.

2 Except. Words deriv'd of *capio*, as *auceps*, *forceps*, *maniceps*, *municeps*, *particeps*, *princeps*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um*. Yet Justin, l. 1. from *princeps* formeth *principium*.

In the most, the Reason may be to distinguish them from Substantives Sing. ending in *ium*, as *aucupium*, *mancipium* &c.

3 Except. Latin Words form'd of Greek ones ending in *ων*, in Greek, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um* in Latin, as *Arabs* *Arabum*, *Æthiops* *Æthiopum*: So *calybs*, *Cyclops*, *Phalanx*; to which add these Monosyllables, *styx*, *lynx*, *sphinx*.

Rule

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 15

Rule III. Nouns ending in *er*, *es*, and *is*, not increasing in the Gen. Case Sing. have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*, as *venter ventrium*, *nubes nubium*, *piscis piscium*. *Piscis attritu ventrium coquunt.* Plin. l. 9. c. 20.

So Greek Words of the 2d Declension of the Contracts, as *Syrtis Syrtium*, *diacefis diacefium*.

Hither refer *caro carniū*, there having being anciently *hæc carnis*, *hujus carnis*.

Except. Yet from this Rule are excepted *juvenis juvenum*, *canis canum*; and *panis panum*, if it be read in the Plur. Num. in that Case.

Rule IV. Sundry Words of more Syllables than one, increasing in the Gen. Case Sing. have *ium* in their Gen. Case Plur. *v. z. civitas, utilitas, hereditas*: So *Samnis* and *Quiris*; also *palis* and *formæ*.

Civitatum is in *Just.* l. 9. *Utilitatum* in *Liv.* l. 45. *Hereditatum* in the *Pandectis*; notwithstanding the syncopated Termination in *um* is in these much more usual. So *Samnitium* is in *Liv.* l. 7. *Quiritium* in *Hor.* l. 1. Od. 1. but their Nom. Case formerly was *Samnitibus* and *Quiritibus*: So that these Words may be reduc'd to Rule III. *Paludium* is in *Co'um.* l. 3. c. 9. *Fornacium* in *Plin.* l. 35. c. 14. tho' *paludum* is also read in *Mela*, l. 3. c. 3. and *fornacum* in *Plin.* l. 34. c. 10.

Rule V. Some Words that are only plurals, have their Gen. ending in *ium*, as *Manes Manium*, *Penates Penatium*, *tres trium*, and *mania manium*. Also these two Singulars, *sal* (Wit) and *vis*, have in their Gen. Plur. *salium* and *virium*.

Tres hath *trium*, from the Greek *τρεῖς*. *Sales*, (for Jest or Conceits) is so rarely found (tho' it be found, and in *Cicero*) in that Sense in the Sing. Numb. that it hath been taken for an only plural. The Nom. Sing. of *vires* is *vis*; but that being made of *viris* by a Syncope and a Crasis, thence comes the Gen. Plur. *virium*. Of *mania manium*, see *Danef. Schol.* p. 53.

On the other Side, *opes*, *primores*, *lemures*, *calites*, *caleres*, *luceros*, and *proceres*, have *um* in the Gen. Plur.

These Words are taken to be plurals only, but are all, or most, found to have Singulars: See my Explanations of *Quæ Genus on Mascula sunt tantum*, &c. Celeres

16 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

Celeres, luceres, and proceres, come of celer, lucer, and procer, out of Use.

Rule VI. Several sorts of Words of one Syllable have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium, viz.*

1. Such Latin Words in *x* as have a Consonant before *x*, have the Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*, as *arx, calx, falx, lanx, merx.* Gen. *arcium, &c.*

2. Some Words of one Syllable, that have a Vowel before *x*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*, as *nix, nix, faux, crux, trux.* Gen. *nivium, &c.* *Faucium* is read in *Plin. l. 21. c. 21.* *crucium* in *Tertul.*

The rest make *um*, as *rex* and *lex*, with *rex* and *dux, strux, vox, Phryx, Thrax*, and *nux.* *Nucum* is read in *Plin. l. 15. c. 22.* Also *prex* and *frux* (out of Use) have *precum* and *frugum.*

3. Some Words of one Syllable, that end in a liquid Consonant, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*, as *par parium, lar larium, cor cordium.*

Par hath *parium*, as coming from *paris*; and thence *compar* hath *comparium.*

The rest end in *um*, as *ren renum, splen splenum, fur furum.*

But *mel, fel, and sel*, have no Gen. Case Plur.

4. Some that end in *i* pure (with a Vowel before it) have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*, as *as assium, mas marium, vas vadium, bes bestium, lis litium, glis glirium, dis ditium, vis virium, cos cotium, dos doctum, os ossi ossium*, (and by Analogy, *os oris orium*, if it were to be used) and *mus murium*

The rest have *um, viz. pes pedum.* (whence *bipes bipedum*) *pues pradium, mas morum, flos florum, thus thurum, crus crurum, sui suum, grus gruum, laus laudum, fraus fraudum, bos boum* (by a Syncope for *bovium*)

Of *jus* Case hath *jurum*, *Plautus*, *jurium*, of which, *utrumque insolens* saith *Vossius*. If *as* and *rus* were to form a Gen. Plur. it should be *arum* and *urum*, rather than *arium* and *urium*. Mr. *Farnaby* saith *pus purum*

5. All Words that end in *i* impure (or having a Consonant before it) have their Gen. Plur. in *ium*, as *ars arrium, pars partium, mens mentium, fons fontium, pons pontium, dens dentium, trabs trabium, urbs urbium.*

Except

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 17

Except *gryps grypum*, *seps sepum*, which are originally Greek Words. To which may be added *Sphynx Sphynxum*. Vid. R. 2. Excep. 3. Pag. 14.

1 Note, Many Words in *ium* are found by a Syncope to have a Termination in *um*; as *Optimatum* for *optimatum*, us'd by Corn. Nepos. *Summatum* for *summatum*, by Plaut. *Sonitum* for *sonitum*, by Stat. *Agrestum* for *agrestium*; and *calestum* for *caelestium*, by Virg. *Volucrum* for *volucrum* by Plin. *Cadum* for *cadum*, by Silius. *Sedum* for *sedum*, by Cic. *Mensum* for *mensum*, by Paul. J. C. *Paludum* for *paludium*, by Mela. *Fornacum* for *fornacium*, by Plin. *Forum* for *forum*, by Plaut. *Larum* for *larium*, by Varro. *Offum* for *offum*, by Apul. *Murum* for *murium*, by Cic.

Utilitatum, *civitatum*, *hereditatum*, are ordinary. So are the syncopated Cases of Particles; such as *cadentum*, *faventum*, *fuventum*, *loquentum*, *manentum*, *natantum*, *potentum*, *precantum*, *regnantum*, *rudentum*, *sequentum*, *silentum*, *venientum*, all in Virgil, and the like in others; and likewise these *parentum* and *quadrupedantum*.

2. Note, many Words have in the Gen. Plur. one Termination in *ium*, and another in *orum*; as the Names of Feasts, *Floralia*, *Floralium*, and *Floraliorum*; *Agonalia*, *Agonalia*, and *Agonaliorum*; *Saturnalia*, *Saturnalia*, and *Saturnaliorum*, &c.

Of these the Termination in *ium* is form'd from a Nom. Case in *e*, v. g. *Florale*, &c. that in *orum* is form'd from a Nom. Case Sing. in *ium*, v. g. *Floralium*, &c.

The like may be said of *alvearium* and *alveariorum*; the first from *alvear* and *alveare*, the second from *alvearium*. So of *exemplarium* from *exemplar*, and *exemplariorum* from *exemplarium*, (turn'd by Ignatius (Epist. ad Trall.) into *ἑξemplαριον*.) So of *vestigalium* and *vestigaliorum*, *ancilium* and *anciliorum*, *sponsalium* and *sponsaliorum*, *viridium* and *viridiorum*, *cnclavium* and *cnclaviorum*, it may be said the several Terminations in the Gen. Plur. are form'd from several Terminations in the Nom. Sing. it being not unusual for Words to have such Variety of Terminations: For Example, *milliare* and *milliarium* are both in Cicero; *torcular* and *torcularium* in Cato, and *Lupanar* and *Lupanarium*. So Aulus Gell. hath *vulgaris* and *vulgaris*.

18 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

Turpilus hath both *singularis* and *singularius*, as *Vossius* from *Nomus* tells us

So again Greek Words in *ma* have two Genitives, one in *um*, from the Nom. Sing. in *ma* of the Greek Termination, and one in *orum* from a Nom. Sing. *iri um* of a Latin Termination, *poematum* from *hoc poema*, and *poematuum* from *hoc poematum*, &c.

Sometimes Greek Words have their Greek Termination written in Latin Letters, as *Harescō*, *Epigrammatōn*, *Metamorphoseōn*.

Of the Dative Case Plural of the Third Declension.

The Dative Case Plural of the 3d Declension regularly endeth in *ibus*, as *lepidibus*.

By this Termination *ibus*, the Dat. Case Plur. of the 3d Declension is distinguish'd from the Dat. Plur. of the 5th, which ends in *ebus*; and of the 4th too, which tho' it hath *ibus* (as being deriv'd from this Declension) yet it hath not *ibus* only, as this hath. *Bus*, which is ordinarily given for the Termination of this Case, is common to all three Declensions; and to those also of the 1st that ends in *abus*. For *abus*, *ebus*, *ibus*, *abus*, *abus*, all end in *bus*.

Bobus and *bubus*, which differ from this Termination, are contracted of *bovibus*. *Voss. de Arte Gram.* l. 2. c. 15. So *subus* is said for *suibus*, which *Cicero* hath, l. 9. *de Fin.*

Quinquaginti is from *quinquaginta*, *quinquagintorum*; *quinquaginta* is from *quinquaginta*, *quinquagintum*, or from *quinquaginta*, as *fructibus* from *fructus*

Neuter Greek Words in *ma*, besides their Dat. in *ibus*, have another in *is*; but that is form'd as from a Nom. in *um*.

For Example, *Poematus* is form'd from *hoc poematum*, as *poematibus* from *hoc poema*; and so 'tis in the rest. Not to note, that these kind of Words have a Formation of the 1st Declension; whence we read of *Diademam dedit*, in *Pompon Cam servili Schema*, in *Plant.* And *exemplar impetrata Schema*, in *Sueton.* Of which Way of forming those Terminations in *is* may be some Remains. See *Danes. Schol.* l. 1. c. 13.

Some

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 19

Sometimes among the Ancients there is met with al a Dat. of a Greek Termination in *sin* (i. e. *σ* with *ν* added to it) as *Dryasin*, *Hamadryasin*, *Etheisin*, *Schemasin*. But these, as not being Latin Words, cross not our Rule; and as being rare, are only to be observ'd, not follow'd.

Of the Genitive Case Singular of the Fourth Declension.

The Gen. Case Sing. of the 4th Declension regularly ends in *is*, as *manus*.

Yet some Words now of the 4th Declension anciently were also of the 2d Declension; and of them remains a Gen. Case in *i*, as *ornati* of *ornatus*, *tumulti*, of *tumultus*.

Hence *Ter. Eun* 2. 2. *Quid istuc inquam ornati est?* And *Phorm.* 1. 3. *Ubi ejus adventi venit in mentem?* And *Ade'ph* 5. 4. *Hoc fructi pro labore ab his fero.* And *And.* 2. 2. *In edibus nihil ornati, nihil tumulti.* Of the same Stamp are those cited by *Vossius* and *Nonius*.

Senati, sumti, exerciti, aesti, aspecti, gemiti, pescati, quæsti, geli, victi, strepiti, lucti, salti, partii, partii, soni, and fluctui

Huc commigravit sui quæsti causâ. *Plaut Pæn. Prol.* 95.

Again, some Words now, of the 4th Declension, anciently were of the 3d; and of them remains a Gen. Case in *is*, as *annis* of *annus*.

Hence *Ter. He.* 2. 3. *Ejus annis causa opinior, quæ erat mortua.* Of the same Stamp are *senatus* for *senatus*, *domus* for *domus*, *fluctus* for *fluctus*, which *A. Gell.* saith *M. Varro* and *P. Nigidius*, learned Romans, did use. So also *ritus* for *ritus*, *fructus* for *fructus*, *victus* for *victus*, and *gradus* for *gradus*; which *Vossius* citeth from their Authors, *de Analog.* l. 2. c. 17. See also *Danes. Schol.* l. 1. c. 19.

Of the Gen. Case in *uis*, is made the regular Gen. in *ui*, by a Crasis, whence the Termination is long.

Of the Dative Case Singular of the Fourth Declension.

The Dat. Sing. of the 4th Declension regularly ends in *ui*, as *manui*.

20 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

Yet, by an *Anastrophe*, it is cut off from many Datives of this Declension, and for *ui*, is read *u*, as *orna:u* for *ornatui*.

So *Ter. Ad. 1. 1. Vestitu nimio indulges*, (if *vestitu* be not there the Abl. Case, as some think) *Virg. Æn. 1. Parce metu Cytheræa, Caf. in Dolab Act 3. In adibus fanisq; posita, & honori erant & ornatu*, *Tacit. Annal. 14. Cruciatu, aut premio cuncta pervia esse* *Yea*, quibus subito impetu, ac latrocinio parricidarum resistat, is *Cicero's*, saith *Vossius*. Of the same Stamp i. *viſu*, concubitu, adſpectu, for *viſui*, concubitu, adſpectui, in *Virg. Exercitu* for *exercitui*, in *Varro. Cursu* for *cursui*, in *Veg. Anu* and *viſu* for *anui* and *viſui* in *Lucil. Uſu* for *uſui*, in *Lucret. Dominatu* for *dominatui*, in *Caf. Luxu* for *luxui*, in *Saluſt. and Tacit. Venatu* for *venatui*, *curru* for *curru*, in *Virg. Quæſtu* and *cultu* for *quæſtui* and *cultui*, in *Plaut. Delectu* for *delectui*, in *Liv. See Schrevel. in Ter. Ad. 1. 1. Farnab. Gram. p. 14. Alvar Inſtit. Gram p. 217. A Gell. 1. 14. c. 16. Voſſ. de Analog. 1. 2. c. 18.*

Of the Ablative Case Singular of the Fourth Declension.

The Abl. Case Sing. of the 4th Declension regularly ends in *u*, as *manu*.

Impete is not, as some would have it, the Abl. Case of *impetus*, but of *impes*, whose Gen. *impetis* is in *Lucret. 1. 6.* and Abl. *impete* is in *Ovid. Met. 3.* See my Explanations of *Quæ genus on Sunt Diptera, &c.*

Of the Genitive Case Plural of the Fourth Declension.

The Gen. Case Plur. of the 4th Declension regularly ends in *uum*, as *manuum*.

Of *uum* in this Case by a Syncope is made *um*.

Hence *currum* for *curruum*, in *Virg. Æn. 6. nurum* for *nuruum*, in *Virg. Æn. 12.* and *paſſum* for *paſſuum*, in *Martial. 1. 2. Ep. 5.*

Of the Dative Case Plural of the Fourth Declension.

The Dat. Case Plur. of the 4th Declension most usually ends in *ibus*, as *manibus*.

Yet, 1. Some Words of this Declension end in *ubus*, as *ſpecus, arcus, artus, lacus, tribus, partus.*

Hence

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 21

Hence Hor. 5. Epod. *per liber s. te. si vocata partibus.*
Ovid. 4. Fast. *Pramia de lacubus proxima musta tuis.* Vir.
Ep. de Liwo'e, *Et totum bibit artubus cruorem.*

Some add *acubus, quercubus, ficubus*, which yet *Avarus* thinks to be no where found; no, nor *acibus, quercitus, ficibus*; for the last of which, *ficis* of the 2d Declension is in Use, and *præplacet Plinio*, as Mr. Farnaby saith, *System. Gram. p. 15.*

2. Some Words of this Declension end both in *ibus* and *ubus*, as *quæstus, genu, portus, veru.*

Quæstibus and *quæstubus, genibus* and *genubus*, are read in Ovid and Seneca; *portibus* and *portubus* in Cæsar. Bell. Civ. where yet, saith Vossius for *portibus* the Manuscripts read *portubus*. *Veribus* is read in Virg. 1 Æn. *Pars in frustra secant, veribusq; tremontia figunt.* *Verubus* is read in Ovid. 6 Met. *Pars verubus stridet.* See Danes. Schol. l. 1. c. 14.

Of the Genitive Case Singular of the Fifth Declension.

The Gen. Case Sing. of the 5th Declension now regularly ends in *ei*, as *dici.*

Anciently there were other Terminations of it.

1. Sometimes the Termination of the Gen. was the same as that with the Nom. namely *es.*

In this Respect it was so with Nouns of this Declension, as with Parasyllabical Nouns in *is* of the 3d Declension; from whence probably this Declension was form'd.

Hence that of Cicero *pro Sex. io*, relating the Words *Consulis dexteros*, as H. Stephanus thinks, *Equites verò daturus illius diei penas.* So Lucret. lib. 4. — *Rabies inde illa hæc germina surgunt.*

2. Sometimes *ei* was first contracted into *ei*, and then into *i.*

As *Ulyssæi*, of *Ulyssæus*, is first contracted into *Ulyssæi*, (trisyllab.) and then into *Ulyssi.*

Hence that of Virg. 1 Æn. as some read it, *Munera latitiâmq; dii.* And that of Corn. Nep *Quæ quidem res & illis contemptibus pernicii & huic despectu salutis fuit.* And so the rest which are read in the same Termination in ancient Authors and Manuscripts, viz. *progent*

22 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

acil, luxurii, specii, fidii, famii for *famei* of *fames*, sometimes of the 5th Declension. See Gell. l. 9. c. 9.

3. Sometimes *i* was by an Apocope cut off from *et* in the Gen. Case.

Hence that of *Salust. Vin decimâ parte die reliquâ*; and *Dubitavit acie pars*; and *Et jam die vespere erat*; and *At inde nullâ munitionis aut requie morâ processit ad oppidum*. And that of *Anson. Carm. de Rosa. Ad primos radices interitura die*. And that of *Ovid. 3 Met. Prima fide vocisq; rate tentamina sumpsit*; and *lib. 7. Meditataq; pene reliquit tentamenta fide*; and *ib. ver. 742. Cui non ista fide satis experientia sano Magna foret satis?* and *lib. 6. Utq; fide pingus dexteras utraq; poposcit*. And that of *Horace, 1 Carm. 2 Od. Libra die somniq; parcs Ubi fecerit umbras*.

Of the Dative Case Singular of the Fifth Declension.

The Dat. Case Sing. of the 5th Declension regularly ends in *ei*.

Yet this Dat. is sometimes found to end in *e*, the *i* being cut off by an Apocope.

Hence *Lucil. l. 1. Etati facioq; tua*. *Hor. l. 1. Sat. 3. Prodiderit commissa fide*. And this Dat. in *e* was us'd by those, *qui purissimo locuti sunt*, saith Gell. Noct. Att. l. 9. c. 14. See *Danesh. Schol. p. 62. Viss. de Analog. l. 2. c. 19.*

C H A P. II.

Of the Comparing of Adjectives.

AFTER the Learner is perfected in the forming of Nouns Substantives, then let him be made skilful in the forming of Regular Comparisons of Adjectives; so as that hearing one Positive Degree of any compar'd Adjective, he can instantly form thereof a Comparative and Superlative in any Case, Gender, or Number, as *doctus, doctior, doctissimus*; *docta, doctior, doctissima*; *doctum, doctius, doctissimum*; &c.

That

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 23

That he may do this with the greatest Ease and Readiness, (having first taught him to decline the Positive alone, so as that he can either decline it in both Numbers thro' all Terminations, viz. *doctus, docta, doctum; docti, doctæ, docti, &c.* or (which is the harder Work) in one singular Termination, viz. *doctus, docti, docto, &c. docta, doctæ, doctæ, &c. doctum, docti, docto, &c.*) practice him first to decline only the Comparative together with the Positive, according to the several Terminations of it, thus, Nom. *doctos, doctior;* Gen. *docti, doctioris;* Dat. *docto, doctiori, &c.* Nom. *docta, doctior;* Gen. *doctæ, doctioris;* Dat. *doctæ, doctiori, &c.* Nom. *doctum, doctius;* Gen. *docti, doctioris;* Dat. *docto, doctiori, &c.* Then all the three Degrees together, first in the Masculine, then in the Feminine, and so in the Neuter Gender, throughout all Cases of both Numbers, thus, *doctus, doctior, doctissimus; docti, doctioris, doctissimi, &c. docta, doctior, doctissima; doctæ, doctioris, doctissima, &c. doctum, doctius, doctissimum; docti, doctioris, doctissimi, &c.* and at last of all, all the three Degrees together in all Cases of both Numbers, and thro' all the Genders of every Case together, thus, Nom. *doctus, doctior, doctissimus; docta, doctior, doctissima; doctum, doctius, doctissimum.* Gen. *docti, doctioris, doctissimi; doctæ, doctioris, doctissimæ; docti, doctioris, doctissimi, &c.* And so let him go on to do Adjectives of other Terminations, as, *tener, felix, prudens, ventus, &c.*

When the Scholar has attain'd to a competent Readiness in the forming of *Regular* and *Perfect Comparisons*, let him then proceed to, and be made acquainted with those Comparisons that are *Irregular*, or *Defective* or *Redundant*. Touching which, because it may be useful both to Teachers and Learners, I will here set down such a Collection of Rules and Observations, as I gather'd for my private Use, beginning first with the *Irregular Comparisons*.

Of Irregular Comparisons.

Irregular Comparison is when Degrees are form'd not according to Rule.

1. Pos-

24 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

1. Positives in *er*, from a Superlative Degree, by assuming unto them *rimus*, as *pulcher pulcherrimus Celerissimus*, found in *Manlius* and *Ennius*, is from *celeris*.

2. These three, *facilis*, *similis*, and *humilis*, form their Superlative by changing *is* into *limus*, as *facilis facillimus*, *similis simillimus*, *humilis humillimus*; so the Compounds of *facilis* and *similis*, *difficilis*, *difficillimus*, *dissimilis*, *dissimillimus*. Of *imbecillis* is form'd *imbecillimus*; tho' there be also *imbecillissimus* of *imbecillus*.

3. Adjectives deriv'd of *alco*, *loquor*, *vo'o*, *facio*, form their Comparative and Superlative Degrees as of Positives in *ens*, as *maledicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*; *magniloquus*, *magniloquentior*, *magniloquentissimus*, *benevolus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*; *magnificus*, *magnificentior*, *magnificentissimus*. But *mirificus* hath *mirificissimus*.

4. Adjectives ending in *us* pure, form a Periphrastical Comparative and Superlative, by adding *magis* or *maxime*, and *minus* or *minime*, to their Positive Degree, as *pius*, *magis pius*, *maxime pius*; *assiduus*, *magis assiduus*, *maxime assiduus*; *idoneus*, *minus idoneus*, *minime idoneus*; *reus*, *minus reus*, *minime reus*.

Note, Other Adjectives are in Authors compar'd according to this Periphrastical Way; but these Adjectives are not ordinarily compar'd any other Way.

Yet, tho' it be not ordinary, there may be found Comparatives and Superlatives regularly form'd of this Sort of Adjectives, as *idoneior* of *idoneus*, *arduior* of *arduus*, *innoxior* of *innexius*, *industrior* of *industrius*. So *egregiissimus* of *egregius*, *perpetuissimus* of *perpetuus*, *exiguissimus* of *exiguus*, *vacuissimus* of *vacuus*. Also *strenuior* and *strenuissimus* of *strenuus*, *assiduor* and *assiduissimus* of *assiduus*. Thence *assiduissime* in *Cic. in Brut.* *Assiduissime autem mecum fuit Dionysius*. *Piissimus* of *pius*; which are not but with great Wariness to be us'd. See *Voss. de Analog.* 1. 2. c. 27.

5. These singular Words are also irregularly compar'd.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 25

B nus,	melior,	optimus.
Malus,	perior,	peffimus.
Magnus,	major,	maximus.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus.
Multus,	plus,	plurimus.
Multa,		plurima.
Multum,		plurimum.
Vetus,	veterior,	veterimus. of veter.
citer. * Voffius	citerior,	citimus, † Cituma is read
faith, Cato us'd		in Cic. I. de Rep. Deduc.
it, but that now		Orationem tuam de calo ad
it is almost		hac cituma; sc. by an Anti-
grown obse-		stachon, for citima as we
lete.		find maxime for maxime.
Inferus,	inferior,	infimus and imus.
Exterus,	exterior,	extremus
and }		and
Exter,		extimus.
Superus,	superior,	supremus and summus.
Posterus,	posterior,	postremus and postumus.
Nequam,	nequior,	nequissimus.

And thus far of Comparisons Irregular.

Note, Before the Learning of either in Lat'n, it might be useful to be taught the doing of both in English: as Reg. Braver, braver, bravest; sweet sweeter, sweetest. Irreg. Good, better, best; bad, worse, worst; &c

Now follows Comparison Defective.

Of Defective Comparisons.

Defective Comparison is when any one of the three Degrees is wanting.

These are said to want the Positive Degree.

Prior primus, from the obsolete pris.

Ocius, ocissimus, from ocus, ocus.

Potior potissimus,
Deterior deterrimus,
Ulterior ultimus,
Penitior penitissimus.

} from potes, deter, ulter, grown
out of Use.

26 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

Interior intimus, from *inter*.

Proprius proximus, from *propis* or *propus*.

Diutior diutissimus, Of which Word yet *Vossius* saith he remembers not that he ever read it.

These are said to want the Comparative Degree.

Apricus apricissimus, *bellus bellissimus*, *consultus consultissimus*, *meritus meritissimus*, *novus novissimus*, *nuper nuperissimus*, *diversus diversissimus*, *falsus falsissimus*, *fides fidissimus*, *inclutus inclutissimus*, *invitus invitissimus*, *persuasus persuasissimus*, *sacer sacerissimus*.

¶ Yet there may be found in *Gellius* both *novius* and *diversus*. Hence *Plin.* l. 12. c. 9. *Pretia nulla diversiora*. *Justin.* l. 16 hath *Ut eos sibi fidioris redderet*. Our *Danaus*, in his *Prælect. ad Lysiam*, hath *bellid*, an Adverb. And *Petronius*, *Nihil est hominum inopit persuasione falsius*. *Cicero* hath *invitiùs*, an Adverb, *Quem ego paulo sciebam invitius ad hoc sermonis genus accedere*. *De Orat.* l. 3. 123. a. So *invisus*, formerly thought to want a Comparative, hath *invisior*, in *Cic. Offic.* l. 2. §. 9. *Quo enim quis versutior & calidior est, hoc invisior & suspectior*. So *solicitus* hath *solicitor*, *Cic. Fam.* 10 18. *Solicitiorem certe hominem non suis contractis meminere puto fuisse*.

Hither may be referr'd these Nouns, of which there are Superlatives read, which yet I do not recommend to be us'd; *exclusus exclusissimus*, *occlusus occlusissimus*, (*Plaut. Cist.* 1. 1) *par parissimus*; and also these Pronouns, *tuis tuissimus*, *ipse ipissimus*, us'd by *Plaut.* in *Trin.* in Imitation of *Aristophanes*, saying αὐτοῖσι from αὐτός.

These are said to want the Superlative Degree :

Adolescens adolescentior, *communis communior*, *dives divitior*, *declivis declivior*, *dexter dexterior**, *grandis grandior*, *ingens ingenitor*, *salutaris salutarior*, *sinister sinisterior**, *supinus supinior*, *infinitus infinitior*, *juvenis junior*, *longinquus longinquior*, *opimus opimior*†, *procli-*

* *Dextimus* and *sinistissimus* signify no more than *dexter* and *sinister*. See *Alvar.*

† *Gell.* l. 5. c. 4.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 27

vis proclivior, propinquus propinquior, remissus remissior, satur saturior, senex senior, taciturnus taciturnior.

¶ Yet *Plautus*, *Curc.* 1. 1. hath *taciturnissimus*; and *Cicero*, *divitissimus*, 1. 1. *de Div.* c. 36. 448. b. Of *dirus* is read *dirius*, *Cic. de Div.* 1. 2. c. 15. *Quibus nihil videtur esse dirius.*

These want both the Positive and the Superlative Degrees, viz. *Satior, anterior, licentior, sequior, alior. Nihil quietius, nihil alius*, *Cic. Att.* 4. 8. Whither may be referr'd *Punior, Neronior, Cinador*, of which as there is no Superlative read, so no Positive, but a Noun Substantive, viz. *Pannus, Nero, Cinadus. Nul- lus me est hodie Pannus punior. Plant. Pan.* 5. 2. 31.

Some want both Positive and Comparative, as *Victorissimus, Patruissimus, Plautinissimus, &c.* which are not imitable. *Optatus mi patruissime. Plant. Pan.* 5. 4. 25.

And thus far of Comparison Defective; now follows Comparison Redundant.

Of Redundant Comparisons.

Redundant Comparison is when any one Degree hath various Formations, which happens mostly in the Superlative Degree.

Sometimes there are two Superlatives of one Positive, as *extremus* and *extimus* of *extremus*, *infimus* and *imus* of *inferus*, *maturissimus* and *maturrimus* of *maturus*. See *Voss. de Analog.* 1. 2. c. 25. *Piissimus* and *Pientissimus* of *pius*, *postremus* and *postumus* of *posterus*, *supremus* and *summus* of *superus*.

Sometimes of a Superlative Degree there is form'd a new Comparative or Superlative, as *proximior* of *proximus*, *extremius* and *extremissimus* of *extremus*, (*extremissimus* is us'd by *Lipsius*, 1. 2. *de Cruce*, c. 12.) *minimissus* of *minimus*, (*minissimus*, by *Jam. Doussé Plauten Explie.* 1. 3. c. 23.) *postremus* and *postremissimus* of *postremus*. *Nullum animal in terris homine postremius, Appul. de Deo Secret. Pessinissimus* of *peissimus*.

In these, whereof there are Examples in *Voss. de Analog.* 1. 2. c. 26. some later *Latins* have imitated some *Greeks*; for in *Ephes.* iii. 8. we read *ἐλαχίστο- τιστο*

28 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

ἡσθ from ἡλ'χισθ; and so in Xenoph. ἐχάβη from ἐχάβη; who yet are not without great Vnness to be follow'd therein

After this Account of Defective and Redundant well as Irregular Comparisons, it may perhaps ne ungrateful to the learning Reader to have some count of Adjectives that are not compar'd at all, less periphrastically by *magis* and *maxime*, or *ius* and *minime*.

Adjectives not compar'd are,

Cicur, *claudus*, *cannus*, *calvus*, *degener*, *dispar*, *al salvus*, *egenus*, *memor*, *magnanimus*, *mirus*, *j'junus*, *spus*, *unicus*, *delirus*, *canorus*, *balbus*, *ferus*, *vetulus*, *vestris*, *mediocris*, and *edentulus*.

Voss. de Analog. l. 2. c. 22. saith *optimus* hath no Comparative or Superlative; but *Gell. l. 5. c. 14* *membra optimiora*.

Besides these particular Words, there be n Sorts of Adjectives, which Grammarians say are compar'd.

1. Gentiles, as *Romanus*, *Græcus*, *Atheniensis*.
2. Possessive, as *fraternus*, *herilis*, *muliebris*, *castus*.
3. Numerals, as *septimus*, *ternarius*, *tertianus*.
4. Diminutives, as *tenellus*, *tantillus*, *tantulus*.
5. Materials, as *aureus*, *areus*, *lapideus*, *ligneus*.
6. Temporals, as *matutinus*, *hesternus*, *biennus*.
7. Compounds of *fero* and *gero*, as *salutifer*, *coru*.
8. Words ending in the Terminations following
 1. *bundus*, as *moribundus*, *conflabundus*.
 2. *imus*, as *bimus*, *trimus*, *maritimus*.
 3. *ivus*, as *deliberativus*.
 4. *plex*, as *duplex*, *triplex*.
 5. *ster*, as *campester*, *sylvestre*.

¶ Yet *Ramus* owns *festivior* and *festivissimus* of *ivus*, and *simplicius* of *simplex*, which he saith *Quælian* thought well of; and *Vossius* also excepts *mplex*, *l. 2. de Analog. c. 27*. And others may find c Exceptions, which whether in this, or in any t else, so they be upon good Authority, I shall gainsay.

C H A P. III.

Of the Forming of Verbs.

THE Scholar being perfect'd in the forming of Nouns, and comparing of Adjectives, the next Thing that I would have him well grounded in, is the forming of Verbs; in the performing of which Work, several Teachers have several Ways. That which I practis'd with no ill Success, is as followeth.

First, Make the Scholar understand what Tenses in all Moods are form'd of the Present Tense, and what of the Preterperfect Tense; namely, That of the Present Tense of the Indicative Mood are form'd the Preterimperfect and Future Tenses of the same Mood, the Present and Preterimperfect Tenses of all other Moods; the Gerunds and Participles of the Present Tense and of the Future in *du*s. And of the Preterperfect Tense of the Indicative Mood are form'd the Preterpl. perfect Tense of the same Mood. the Preterperfect, Preterpluperfect, and Future Tenses of all other Moods, the Supines and Participles of the Present Tense and Future in *ru*s. As the Present Tense Active, *Amo, amabam, amabo; ama, amato; amem, amarem, amare, amandi, amando, amandum, amans*. Preterperfect. *Amavi, amaveram, amaverim, amavissem, amavero, amavisse, amaturum esse, amatum, amatu, amaturus* So Present Passive, *Amor, amabar, amabor; amare, amatur; amer, amarer, amari, amandus*. Preterperfect. *Amatus sum vel fui, amatus eram vel fueram, amatus sim vel fuerim, amatus essem vel fuissim, amatus ero vel fuero, amatum esse vel fuisse, amatum iri vel amandum esse, amatus*.

And here it were not amiss to acquaint the Learner what Part of the Verb is fix'd in the Formation of it, as *am* in *amo*, *doc* in *docco*, &c. and what Part of it is moveable, as *e* in *ama*, *eo* in *docco*, &c. and how far those Motions are regular, and how far they are irregular; sometimes the *e* being only mov'd, and some-

sometimes both the *o* and the Vowel foregoing is For He'ps to which there are Tables of Formation publish'd by several Grammarians ; so that it may be sufficient for me to refer to them.

When the Learner knows in what Order the Verb is to be form'd, and what Tenses each of other, then let him begin the forming of it with the Latin before the English, and together with the Verb, naming also the Nominative Case of the Personal Pronoun wherewith it agrees, thus, *Ego amo* I love, *tu amas* thou lovest, *ille amat* he loveth, *nos amamus* we love, *vos amatis* ye love, *illi amant* they love ; and so throughout all the Moods and Tenses of the Active Voice.

To prepare him for this, and for other Purposes, it will be highly beneficial to teach him to form English Verbs alone throughout all Moods and Tenses, Numbers and Persons, thus, Ind. Pres. Sing. Numb. and first Person, *I love* or *do love*, Preterimperfect, *I loved* or *did love*, Fut. *I shall* or *will love*

Then let him go over the Active Voice again in the same Order, with the Latin still before the English ; but naming only one Person of a Tense at a Time and then proceeding to the next, thus, *Ego amo* I love, *ego amabam* I loved, or did love, &c.

When he hath in this Order gone over all the Persons of all the Examples of the four Conjugations, giving the English for the Latin, then let him in the same Order go over them all again, only giving up the Latin for the English, or setting the English before the Latin, thus, I love, *ego amo* ; thou lovest, *amas*, &c. and, I love, *ego amo* ; I loved or did love *ego amabam* ; and so through all Moods and Ten Numbers and Persons. And let not this Exercise be left off 'till he be exact in it.

When the Active Voice is gain'd. then proceed to the Passive ; and let that be got in the same Manner and Order, first Latin before English, then English before Latin ; first all the Persons of each Tense, one Person only of a Tense at once ; first the first

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 31

Tense, and all that come of it ; then the Preterperfect Tense, and all that come of it likewise.

And when the Passive Voice is also thus gain'd, then go again to work to the getting of both Active and Passive together, in the same Manner and Order, Latin before English, and English before Latin ; beginning first with the Present Tense, and those that come of it, and going on to the Preterperfect Tense, and those that come of that.

When the Scholar is perfect in doing thus all the four Examples of his Grammar, then put him to other Examples, which he will within a while readily do ; and, *extempore*, being made thus perfect in these.

It will be very useful, after this Practice, to put other Substantives, besides the Pronouns, before the Verbs, and form them together with the Verbs, thus, *Ego pater amo*, &c. *Ego mater amor*, &c. *Tu magister doces*, &c. *Tu puella doceris*, &c. *Ille vir legit*, &c. *Illa istis legitur*, &c. *Nos pueri audimus*. *Vos virgines ploratis*, *Illa regna perduntur*, or the like.

If the Teacher pleases, he may yet go on to put his Scholar to the adding of a casual Word after his Verb, choosing sometimes a Verb that governeth an Accusative, sometimes one that governeth a Dative, and sometimes one that governeth a Nominative after it, as *Ego amo te*, *tu places mihi* ; *Horatius salutatur Poeta* ; *Virgilius legitur à me*.

How great will be the Benefit of this Exercise, is so visible, that I need not expatiate in the Commendation of it. Briefly therein there is laid the main Ground-Work of the Latin Tongue : For in this Exercise all the three Concords are practicably learn'd ; that of the Nominative Case and the Verb, in the declining of the Verb with his Personal Pronoun ; that of the Substantive with the Substantive, in declining together with the Pronoun-Substantive another Noun Substantive, *Ego pater amo* ; and that of the Substantive and Adjective, in the declining of the Preterperfect Tenses of the Verbs Passives with Nominative Cases of divers Genders, *Ego pater amatus sum*, *et mater amata es vel fuisti*, *illud regnum eversum est vel fuit*,

32 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

suit, &c. And I need not say how great an Insight is given into the Government of Verbs, by adding a casual Word to the Verb, accordingly as I have shewn.

This Exercise need not be done continuedly and altogether, but one Part of it at once, and that every Morning after the saying of the Morning Part. And in about a quarter of a Year's Time it will, if well follow'd, be well learn'd.

After the Scholar is grown exact in the forming of Verbs Perfect and Regular, then let him be thoroughly instructed in the Verbs Defective and Irregular. The Irregular Verbs are competently done already in the Accidence Of that which Grammarians deliver touching Verbs Defective, I shall, for the Use of the Learner, subjoin this Collection, with Notes upon it.

Of Verbs Defective.

Aio. Indicat. Pres. *Aio, ais, ait*. Plur. *aiunt*. Preterimperf. *aciebam, aciebas, aciebat*; '*aciebamus, aciebatis, aciebant*. Imperat. *ai*. Potent. Pres. Sing. *aias, aiat*. Plur. *aiamus, aiunt*. Part. *aiens*.

¶ For *aciebant* the Ancients said *aiabant*. *P. obus* owns in the Preterperf. *ai, aissi, ait*. And it is certain, that in *Tertullian* is read *aierant*. *Vossius* thinks the Ancients us'd yet more, such as *aiis, aite*, and some others. See *Voss. Etymolog. Lat. p. 132.* and *Analog. l. 3. p. 140.*

Ausim. Potent. Pres. and Preterperf. Sing. *Ausim, ausis, ausit*. Plur. *ausunt*.

¶ *Ausim* is us'd for *audeam* and *ausus sim*. It is made by a Syncope of *auserim* form'd from *aus*, which anciently was the Preterperf. of *audeo*, as well as *ausus sum*, which only is in Use.

Salve. Indicat. Fut. *salvobis*. Imperat. Sing. *salve, salveto*. Plur. *salvete, salvetote*. Infin. *salvere*.

¶ *Plautus* useth *salves*, but in the Person of a Rustick; and in that is not to be follow'd, say Grammarians.

Ave Imperat. Sing. *Ave, avelo*. Plur. *avete, avetote*. Infinit. *avere*.

¶ *Ave,*

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 33

¶ *Ave*, consider'd as a Word of Salutation, is a effective, according to what is here deliver'd of it: *ut aveo*, to covet or desire, hath more Tenses.

Cedo. Imperat. Sing. *Cedo*. Plur. *cedite*.

¶ *Cedo* is us'd for *dic* or *porrige*. *Nomen mulieris cedo* *iod sit*, Ter. Heaut. 4. 2. *Puerum mihi cedo*, Terent. c. 4. 4. For *cedite* anciently was said *cette*. *Cette annus vestras*, Enn. in *Medea*.

Faxim. Potent. Preterperf. *Faxim, faxis, faxit*. Plur. *gint*. Fut. *faxo, faxit, faxit*. Plur. *faxint*.

¶ *Faxim* is made of *facerim*, for *facerim*, saith *Vossius*; and so *faxo* of *facero*, for *fecero*: For the Ancients did often retain the Vowel of the Pres. Tense in the Preterperf. Tense. Hence *cannere* in *Salust.* for *cenare*. Of the same Nature and Formation is *axim, daxim, and axo*. There is read also *faximus* and *faxi-* in the Plur. Numb. And *faxem* for *facissem*, saith *Vossius de Analog.* l. 3. c. 41. And *faxero* for *facitum esse*, saith Mr. *Shirly, Via ad Lat. Ling.* p. 99.

Forem. Potent. Preterimperf. Sing. *Forem, fores, fa-* Plur. *forent*. Infin. *fore*.

¶ *Forem* is made of *fuere*, and *fore* of *fuere*, of the old Verb *fuo*. There is also read in *Virgil*, *affo-* et; in *Terence*, *confore*. *Vossius in Etymolog. Lat.* p. 133: names *desforem*.

Quaso. Indic. Pres. *Quaso*. Plur. *quasumus*.

¶ In *Lucret.* there is read *quast*; in *Plaut.* *quasere*; in *Apuleius*, *quasens*; in *Ennius*, *quasendum*. See *Vossius de Analog.* l. 3. c. 41.

Infit. Indic. Pres. *Infit*.

¶ *Infit* comes of *infio*, us'd by *Varro*, as *Priscian* testifies, l. 8. It signifies the same that *incipit*. *Infit ibi ostulare*, *Plaut Aulul.* 2. 4. Hither may be referr'd *desit* for *desit*, *desunt*, *desiet*, *desiat*, *desieri*; also *confit* and *confuri*. *Aliis quia desit quod amant egre est*, Ter. *Qua crescente luna gliscunt, deficiente contra luna desunt*, Zell. *Verum quid ego dicam? hoc confit quod volo*, Ter. *Nunc qua ratione quod instat confieri possit, paucis adverte, docebo*, Virg.

Inquam. Indic. Pres. *Inquam, inquis, inquit*. Plur. *inquimus, inquitis, inquirunt*. Preterimperf. *inquibatur, inquis-*

34 The ART of Teaching improv'd, *inquirebant. Preterperf. inquisti. Fut. inquires, inquire* *Imperat, inquire, inquito.*

¶ Grammarians name more; but 'till what the name be confirm'd by good Authority, it may well to forbear them. These here nam'd may be confirm'd by Authority: *Inquam, inquis, inquit, inquirent, inquirebat, inquirebant, inquisti, inquires, and inquire* are read in *Cicero*; *inquimus* in *Horace*; *inque* in *Terence*; *inquito* in *Plautus*. See *Voss. Etymolog, Lat. p. 133. de Analog. l. 3. c. 40.* *Inquirebat* is in *Cicero's Topics* unless it be mis-printed.

Vale. Indic. Fut. *Valebis.* Imperat. *vale, vale*
valete, valeto. Infin. *valere.*

¶ *Valeo*, to be strong or able, is a perfect Verb; *valebis*, being a Form of Valediction, or bidding dieu or Farewel, is a Verb defective.

Apage. Imperat. *Apage.* Plur. *apagite.*

¶ *Possus* deriveth *apage* and *apagite* from the Greek ἀπάγω, and ἀπάγεις of ἀπώγω, to drive away. *Apagite* is read in *Plaut.* *apagite* in *Cic.*

Ouat. Indic. Pres. *Ouat.* Particip. *Ouans.*

¶ Mr. *Shirly* adds *ouarent* and *ouandi*; his Authority he names not. From a Supine of this Verb *posui* derives the Verbals *ouatus* and *ouatio*.

Explicit. Indic. Pres. *Explicit.* Plur. *explicitant.* *Sily, Gram. Lat. p. 39.*

¶ *Explicit* signifies the same with *desinit*.

Scio. *Scio* in the Imperative Mood hath not *set*.

Soleo. *Soleo* in the Future Tense hath not *solebo*.

Furo. *Furo* hath not in the Imperative Mood *fure*.

Daris, Faris. Neither *dar* nor *for* are read in the dicative Mood nor *der* and *fer* in the Subjunct Mood; yet *daris* and *faris*, &c are us'd. *Diom.* owns *effors.* *Fans* is in *Plaut. Pers. 2. 1. Tu meum genium fans non didicisti, atque insans.*

These three, *odi, capi, memini*, want the Terminate of the Present Tense; but have those that come of the Preterperfect Tense, as *odi, odisti, odisti, oderam, oderim, odissem, odero, odisse.* Part. *psurus.* *capi, caperim, capissem, capero, capisse.* Sup. *capit*

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 35

captu. Particip. *capturus.* So *memini, meminero, meminissim, meminero, meminisse.*

¶ These three Verbs, in the Preterperfect Tense, have the Signification of the Present Tense; and in the Future Tense of the Potential Mood have the Signification of the Future Tense of the Indicative Mood. *Odi* hath also *usus usum*, and *cepi captus sum*, in the Preterperfect Tense; and *memini* hath *memento* and *mementote* in the Imper. Mood. Anciently there was *odio*, whence were form'd, *odivi, odivit, edite, odiet, odient, edibunt, odientes, oditur, ediaris.* So also *capio*, whence *capiam, capiat, caperet*, which are sometimes read, but are now disus'd. It is ordinary to add to these *novi*, because this, like the rest, hath in the Preterperfect Tense the Signification of the Present Tense; but the Verb is a perfect Verb, form'd of *nosce*. See *Voss de Analog. l. 3. c. 39*

And thus far of Forming of Verbs.

C H A P. IV.

Of Translating English into Latin.

BY that Time the Scholar is made perfect in forming Nouns and Verbs, it will be Time to put him not only to learn an Author, but also to make Latin; supposing he hath in the mean Time attain'd to some Competency of Knowledge of the Rules for the Genders of Nouns, and Preterperfect Tenses, and Supines of Verbs, and for the Agreement and Government of Words, in English at least; and however so far, that that he knows where to find, by turning thereto, such Rules as will be needful for him to consult wihal for the true making of his Latin. And supposing also that he knows the several Characters, Marks or Notes of Points, Pauses, or Stops, us'd in speaking or writing, and something also of the Meaning, Use, and Force of them. And supposing also that he hath learned some *Nomenclatura* of Words, or is made able by his Dictionary to find out Latin for his English.

36 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

And because a Taste at least of this Knowledge of Points and Pointing is highly necessary towards the Scholar's both right teaching and understanding, and also to his right construing and translating, therefore I will here add somewhat of it.

Of Points.

The Points are Five. A Period, a Colon, a Comma, a Note of Interrogation, and a Note of Admiration.

A Period is a single Prick, set at the Foot of a Word, thus, (.)

A Colon is two Pricks, set one over the other after a Word, thus, (:) .

A Comma is a small Semicircle, set after a Word, at the Foot of it, thus, (,)

A Note of Interrogation is a Prick set after a Word, with a Semicircle above it, thus, (?)

A Note of Admiration is a Prick set after a Word, with a short streight Line over it, thus, (!)

To these, by some, are added a Semi-Period, a Semi-Colon, and a Semi-Comma.

A Semi-Period is mark'd thus (.) a Semi-Colon thus, (;) and a Semi-Comma thus, (')

And with these are usually taught a Parenthesis, mark'd with two Semicircles, thus, (); and a Paraphesis, mark'd with two Semiquadrats, thus, [].

Of Pointing.

The Rules of Pointing are either General or Particular.

The General Rule, which concerns all the Points, is this, That so many finite Verbs as are either express'd or imply'd in any Sentence, so many Points do belong to that Sentence, if the Words of it be plac'd in the Natural Order.

The particular Rules which concern the several Points, are these :

I. Of a Period.

A Period is set after a Sentence (containing a full and absolute Sense) is compleatly ended, whether it be a simple or compounded Sentence. consisting of one or more Propositions : as, *Sera nunquam est ad bonos mores via. Sen. Nihil enim honestum esse potest,*
quod

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 37

ad justitiā vacat. Cic. Post amicitiam credendum est, te amicitiam judicandum. Sen. Non qui parum habet, qui plū cupit, pauper est. Sen. Sæp. utiīe est non scire id futurum sit: miseram est enim nihil proficientem angī.

Note. Here it may be very useful to instruct the learner, as far as he is capable of it, in the Nature of Enunciations and Propositions, both simple and single, and also complex, and compounded; that he may the better know when his Sense is compleatly deduced, and how the pointing of his Period, in all the parts of it is to be order'd.

II. Of a Colon.

A Colon is set between the dividing Members of a Period, or Sentence compounded of sundry Propositions. Such as are,

1. An Enunciation and its Reason: as, *Vigilandum semper: multæ insidiæ sunt bonis. Cic. Etate fruerē:abili cursu fugit. Sen.*

2. A Proposition and its Reddition in a Similitude: as, *Ut major est vis animi, quam corporis: sic sunt graviores, quæ concipiuntur animo, quam illa, quæ corpore. Cic.*

3. A Concessive, and its Adversative Conjunction: as, *Quaquam ipsa consolatio literarum tuarum mihi gratissima est; tamen illum fructum ex literis tuis cepi, &c. Cic. Fam. 1. 5. Itaque etsi domum bene potus, seroque reverteram: tamen id caput, ubi hæc controversa est, notavi, &c. Cic. Fam. 7. 22. Est invidiosa lex, sicut dixi: verumtamen habet excusationem. non enim videtur hominis lex esse, sed temporis. Cic. 2. de Leg. Agr.*

Note. If the Sense of the first Member be very incomplete, or the Words of either Member transpos'd with the Words of the other, and the whole Period be very short, then set a Comma between them.

4. A Totum, and its Parts in a Distinction: as, *ujus partes duæ sunt: Justitia, in quâ virtutis splendor est maximus, & huic conjuncta beneficentia. &c. Cic. 1. Off. c. 8. Animum in duas partes dividunt: alteram rationis participem faciunt, alteram experientem. Cic. 4. Tusc.*

5. Distinguishing Branches in a Partition: as, *Primum mihi videtur de genere belli: deinde de magnitudine.*

38 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

dine: tum de imperatore diligendo esse dicendum Cic. pro Leg. Manil. Primum docent deos esse: deinde quales sint: tunc mundum ab iis administrari: postremo, consulere eos rebus humanis. Cic. de Nat. Deor.

6. Clause and-Clause in a Transition: as, Causa quæ sit, videtis: nunc quid agendum sit, considerate. Cic. pro Leg. Manil.

III Of a Comma.

1st A Comma is set betwixt the Parts of a compounded Proposition, whether it be Conditional, Causal, or Relative; and whether it be Copulative, Discretive, or Disjunctive.

1. Conditional: as, Si dives est, bonus est. Non si bonus est, dives est.

2. Causal: as, Quia sursum tendit, leve est. Remissa sunt ei peccata, quia d. lexit multum.

3. Relative: as, Qui non est hodie, cras minus aptus erit. Quantum quisque sua numerorum servat in arcæ, tantum habet & fidei Juv. Quanto perditior quisque est, tanto acrius urget. Hor. Quot vûnera, tot ora. Qualis princeps, talis populus. Unde oriuntur omnia, eorcedunt. Non ubi quisque erit, ejus loci jus tenabit. Cic. Donus eris felix, multos numerabiles amicos. Ovid. Quoties dicimus, toties de nobis judicatur. Cic. An:equam insipias, consulto: postquam consulueris, maturè facta opus est. Sall.

4. Copulative: as, Et homo & brutum sentit. Neque metuum quicquam, & cavebo omnia. Neque bonis, neque malis invidendum est. Non & amicus, & adulator est. Hic & pauper, & pius, & doctus est.

5. Discretive: as, Non qui patitur, sed qui facit injuriam, miser est. Felicitas non in habitu, sed in a&te virtutis consistit. Quanquam robustus est, tamen ignavus est. Quanquam planta non sentit tamen vivit. Non quanquam avarus est, tamen vir bonus est.

6. Disjunctive: as, Aut dies est, aut nox. Non aut homo est, aut animal non est. Aut album, aut nigrum, aut mediis coloris est, aut omnino coloratum non est. Non aut hoc, aut illud, aut istud est.

2^{dly}. A Comma is set between the Parts of a simple Proposition, where the Order of the Parts is inverted,

Verted, or the Words ungrammatically plac'd: as, *Animal est, omnis homo. Non est delineata res, vivere.* Sen. Ep. 107.

3dly. A Comma is set before a Substantive, with his Dependents, added to another Substantive by Apposition: as, *Nunc autem studetis me interficere, hominem qui veritatem vobis locutus sum. Delicia vero tua, noster Æsopus, ejusmodi fuit, ut — Cic. Provocare ausus Albanos, gravem & diu principem populum.* Flor.

4thly. A Comma is set before an exegetical Expression, added to something before, for Explication, Restriction, or Amplification, especially if brought in by a Participle or other Adjective: as, *Rheginos credo, quod Scenicis artibus largiri solebant, id huic summam ingenii prædito gloria, noluisse Cic. Sit igitur, Judices, sanctum apud vos, humanissimos homines, hoc poetæ nomen, quod nullo unquam barbaria violavit. Cic. Themistoclem illum, summum Athenis virum, dixisse aiant. Cic*

5thly. A Comma is set before and after an Icon, or Assimilation, inserted within a Sentence for Illustration: as, *Eloquentia magister, nisi, tanquam piscator, eam imposueris hamis escam, quam scierit appetituros esse pisciculis, sine spe prædæ moratur in scopulo.* Petron.

6thly. A Comma is set before and after a Word, or Clause, inserted within another Sentence for Elegancy of Composition: as, *Pacem, etiam qui vincere possunt, volunt Liv. Difficile est dictu, Quirites, quanto in odio sumus apud exterarum nationes, propter eorum, quos ad eas hoc anno cum Imperio misimus, injurias, ac libidines. Cic.*

7thly. A Comma is set after a Vocative Case in the Beginning of a Clause, and both before and after it in the Middle of a Clause: as *Sexte noster, bonam veniam dic, quoniam, &c. Cic. pro Dom. Marce Tulli, quid agis? Cic. 1. Cat. O noster Demæ, ad omnia alia etate sapimus rectius. Ter. Quousque tandem abutere, Carilina, patientiâ nostrâ? Cic. Omnia, mi Lucili, aliena sunt: tempus tantum nostrum est. Sen. Ep. 1.*

Note, The Point after a Vocative Case, in the End of a Clause, is such as the Nature of the Cause requireth, whether Period, Colon, Comma, Interrogation

40 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

gation, or Admiration : as. *Ausculata paucis, nisi molestum est, Demæ.* Ter. Ad. *Ita fac, mi Luci :* vindicæ te tibi Sen Ep. 1. *Dis quidem esses, Demæ, ac tuam rem constabilisses.* Ter Ad. *Quid fit, Ctesipho ?* Ter. *O mi Æschine ! O mi germane !* Ter. Ad.

8thly. A Comma is set before or after an Adjective, standing between two Substantives, and capable of being constru'd with either, to declare to which it belongs : as, *Summâ quidem auctoritate Philosophi, severi sanè atque honestè ; hæc tria genera confusa, cogitationes distinguunt* Cic. 2. Offic. Where the Comma is set after *confusa*, to prevent its being thought to agree with *cogitationes*.

9thly. A Comma is set before a Relative in a latter Clause of a Sentence, or before the Word beginning that Clause in which the Relative is : as *Causa mea est melior, qui non contraria fovi Arma.* Ovid. *L'go Virgilium, præ quo ceteri Poetæ sordent.*

10thly A Comma is set betwixt *quàm* in one Clause, and his Corresponding Particles, *tam, æquè, non minùs, antè, prius, post, &c* in another : as. *Tam te diligo, quàm meipsum.* Ter. *Nihil aque facere ad viperæ morsum, quàm taxi arboris succum.* Suet. *Hæc res non minùs me malè habet, quàm te.* Ter. *Si quàm audax est ad conandum, tam esset obscurus in agendo.* Cic. *Qua causa aut mortua est, quàm tu natus esses.* Cic. *Multo priùs sciui, quàm tu illum amicum habere.* Ter. *Annibal tertio post die, quàm venit, copias in aciem eduxit.* Liv. *Postridie intellexi, quàm à vobis discessi.* Cic. *Vicinum citius adjuveris in fructibus percipiendis, quàm aut fratrem, aut familiarem.* Cic.

11thly. A Comma is set before an Adverb having the Force of a connexive Conjunction, and generally when any connexive Particle is express'd or imply'd : as, *Non arbor erat relicta, non gubernaculum, non funis, aut remus* Petron. *Curris, stupor, satagis, tanquam natus in matellâ.* Petron *Rumorem, fabulam fictam, falsum perhorrescimus* Cic *Cujus omnis ælio, ratio, cogitatio, tutus denique tribunatus, nihil aliud fuit, nisi constant, perpetua, fortis, invicta defensio salutis meæ.* Cic.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 41

12thly. A Comma is set before an Infinitive Verb with his Accusative Case, which may be resolv'd into a finite Verb, and a Nominative Case : as, *Non possum dicere, me nihil perdere.* Sen. Ep. 1. *Sed ostendere, me a grè pati, illi nolui.* Ter. Ad. 1. 2.

13thly. A Comma is set after an Interjection, with his Dependents, if he have any ; unless it be such an Interjection as properly requires another Point, as Interjections of Admiration or Exclamation : as, *Oh, tibi ego ut credam furcifer ?* Ter. And. 3. 5. *Hei mihi cur non habeo spatium, ut—* Ter. And. 4. 1. *Heus, proximus sum egomet mihi.* Ter. And. 4. 1. *Hem ! st, mane.* Ib. *Hem, Pamphile, optime te mihi offers.* Ib. 4. 2.

14thly. A Comma is set after an Ablative Case absolute, with its Dependents, and before it too, if it be in the middle of a Sentence : as, *Sed expostitis adolescentium officiis, deinceps de beneficentiâ dicendum est.* Cic. 2. Offic. *Credo pudicitiam, Saturno rege, moratam in terris.* Juv. *Deum, quo auctore cuncta proveniunt, sine murmuratione comitari.* Sen. Ep. 107.

Of a Semi-Period

A Semi-Period (·) though it differ not in Figure from a full Period, yet is distinguish'd from it by this, that when a great Letter follows, it is call'd *Periodus supina*, or absolutely a Period ; but when a small Letter follows, it is call'd *Periodus pendens*, or a Semi-Period : And 'twou'd do well to be set, not at the Foot, but at the Head of the foregoing Word. A Semi-Period is set betwixt Periods, whereof the latter hath a near Dependence on the former for Sense of Matter, though not for Construction of Words ; the latter beginning with a new principal Verb, as well as the former : as, *Cum rerum natura deliberat, illa dicet tibi, se & diem fecisse, & noctem.* Sen. Ep. 3. *Hodier-nus dies solidus est nemo ex illa quidquam mihi eripuit ; totus inter stratum lectionemque diversus est.* Sen. Ep. 33. The proper Place for a Semi-Period (might it be so far admitted) were betwixt the former and the latter Part of a Period, consisting of a Protasis and its Apposition, or an Enunciation and its Reason ; also betwixt

42 *The Art of Teaching improv'd,*

a *Totum* and his Parts in a Division, and betwixt Clause and Clause in a Transition.

Of a Semi-Colon.

A Semi-Colon (;) is set where the Pause seems less than that of a Colon, and yet greater than that of a Comma: as, *Tu quid divisio possit, considera; quid virtus, non item.* The proper Place for a Semi-Colon seems to be between Member and Member in a Division, (if the Parts be separated from the *Totum* by a Semi-Period) or in a Subdivision (if the Parts be separated from the *Totum* by a Colon); also between Branch and Branch in a Partition; and generally betwixt Opposites in a Distinction.

Of a Semi-Comma.

A Semi-Comma (') is set where a less Pause or Distinction is needful than that of a Comma: And its proper Place, if it may be admitted so far, will be where the Words of a simple Proposition are ungrammatically (or the Parts illogically) plac'd, (*viz.* the Predicate before the Subject); where the Words of one Clause are, for Elegancy of Composition, inserted within the Words of another; where an exegetical Addition is made to a foregoing Substantive, by the Apposition of another Substantive to it, or of an Adjective, or Participle, with its Dependence on it; where a Word so stands between two Clauses, as that it may be taken to belong to either; and, generally, where there is need of more Pauses in Pronunciation, than there are distinct Parts of the Construction, as where the Circumstances of Actions, [*viz.* Time, Place, Manner, Means, &c] are express'd together with them.

This Period of *Cicero's*, pointed as follows, may, in Part, be an Exemplification of the foregoing Rules. *Denique, Quirites, quoniam me quatuor omnino genere hominum volarunt. Unum eorum, qui odio reipublice quod eam, ipsis inviti, conservaram, mihi inimicissimi fuerant: alterum, qui, per simulationem amicitiae, nefarie prodiderunt: tertium, qui, cum, propter inertiam suam, eadem esset*

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 43

non possent, inviderunt laudi, & dignitati meae: quantum, qui, cum custodes reipub. esse debuerunt, salutem meam, statum civitatis, dignitatem ejus imperi, quod erat penes ipsos, vendiderunt: sic ulciscar genera singula, quemadmodum à quibusque sum provocatus: malos cives, rempub. bene gerendo; perfidos amicos, nihil credendo, atque omnia cavendo; invidos, virtuti, & gloriae serviendo; mercatores provinciarum, revocando domum atque ab iis provinciarum rationem repetendo Cic. ad. Quir. post redit.

Of a Note of Interrogation.

A Note of Interrogation (?) is set at the End of a Question: as, *Qua nota domestica turpitudinis non inusta vicia tua est?*

This Note is sometimes continu'd through many Clauses of a Period: as, *Quousque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientiâ nostrâ? quam diu nos etiam furor iste tuus eludet? quem ad finem sese effrenata jactabit audacia?*

Sometimes it is omitted, though the Speech be interrogative; namely, when the Sentence is lengthen'd so far, that the Interrogative Force, wherewith it began, is by little and little wasted and lost: as, *An tu putas esse bonos viros, qui amicitias utilitate colunt; nihil ad humanitatem, nihil ad honestum referunt; nec libenter ea curant, quae ego nisi curarem præter cætera, prorsus me tuâ benevolentia, in quâ magnam felicitatis meae partem soleo ponere, indignum putarem.*

Of a Note of Admiration.

A Note of Admiration (!) is set after Words of Admiring, Exclaiming, or Deploring: as, *O vir fortis atque amicus!* Ter. Phor. *Proh Deum atque hominum fidem!* Cic. 5. Verr. *Ab virgo infelix!* Virg. 6. Elog. *Vah inconstantiam!* *Vah mea Antiphilla!* *Vah homo impudens!* *Heu stirpem invisam!* Virg. 2. Æn. *Heu pietas!* *heu prisca fides!* Virg. 6. Æn.

Of a Parenthesis.

A Parenthesis () incloses with one Sentence another Sentence which is no Part of it: as, *Deus ad homines venit, imò (quod propius est) in homines venit.* Sen. Ep. 73.

Of a Parathesis.

A Parathesis [] incloses synonymous Words and equipollent Phrases, or exegetical Descriptions added to the former, &c. as, *Aliud nihil, quàm [nisi] flere potui. Non dubium est mihi, quin [nihil vercor ne non] & auctior indies, & illustrior futura sit. Pertusum quicquid in dolium infunditur [i. e. quicquid ingra:º feceres] perit.*

These few plain Rules and easy Directions may be sufficient for a young Learner. For Fulness and Accurateness of Skill in Pointing, Recourse must be had to Grammarians and Rhetoricians, that have written of it; though I know none that has written so fully and accurately, as to be exactly follow'd by all others; most differing, both from others and from themselves herein; and in these Rules I prescribe to none. He that to me seems to have gone the farthest, and come the nearest to the setting of a Standard for others is that ingenious Grammarian, Dr Lewis, in his *Eng. Gram* p. 1. 2. 3. and *Plain and short Rules for pointing Periods*, 1. 2. 3.

It is the usual (and indeed the best) Way to begin with translating. To render this Work easy and successful, it will be good to contrive *Englisbes*, wherein the first Things, and those that are most easy, yet necessary to make Way for what is to follow, shall be propos'd. Such will be little Sentences, containing the Agreement of the Verb Personal with his Nominative Case; Adjective with his Substantive; or Substantive with his Substantive belonging to the same Thing: Or the Government of an Accusative Case by a Verb; or a Genitive Case by a former Substantive, and the like. After some Time spent in these kind of *Englisbes*, more difficult may be proceeded unto; namely, such as contain in them the Agreement and Government of the Relative, &c. or else, to put his Scholars to the translating of some English Book, proper for that Purpose; such as Mr. Wase's *Essay of a Practical Grammar*, Dr. Lewis's *Vestibulum*, Wit's *Common-school*, *Moral Philosophy*; or, *A Treatise of mine own compos'd*

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 45

compos'd for this very Purpose, and intitul'd, *English Examples*, fram'd to the Rules of the *Latin Syntax*; unless he pleases to translate for them himself, *Tully's* sentences, or some Epistle of *Seneca*, or Oration of *Cicero's*, &c.

Let the Teacher in the first Place, teach his Scholar to know, and then cause him to put the English Words out of the Artificial into the Natural Order, and so read them; not suffering him, (as it is the Use with some) just to fall to translating them as he finds them lying in the English Book. The Natural Order being found, the Work is half done; all will then run off itself almost.

The Scholar will be taught the Natural Order of the English by Precept and Practice.

For Precept, the Teacher may be pleas'd to go according to his own Judgment, and his Scholar's Need. In the mean time, he may instil into his Learner these general Rules.

General Rules touching the Natural Order of Words.

The Person spoken to, comes before the Words spoken to him.

Words of Connexion, come before the Words of clauses connected by them.

Words governing others, go before those that are govern'd of them.

Words agreeing with others, follow those that they agree with.

Words declaring others, follow those that they declare.

Words depending on others, follow those that they depend upon.

These general Rules have some Exceptions, as most general Rules have: For the Relative, if it be not in the Nominative Case, comes before the Word that governs it, except that Word be a Preposition; so both the Interrogative and Indefinite, &c. And in English the Adjective oft comes before the Substantive, that it agrees with. But it is a sure Way ever to make the Substantive before the Adjective. But if the

5 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*
The Teacher shall think these Rules too general, he
may be pleas'd to give his Scholar these following,
which are more particular.

*Particular Rules for the Natural or Grammatical Order
of Words.*

Rule I. In the first Place stand Words of Excitation,
or stirring up to Attention: Such as are,

1. Interjections and Adverbs of exhorting, wishing,
calling, shewing, and asking: as, *Oh, heu, heu, age,*
agite, ut, utinam, heus, eho, ebodum, en, ecce, ar, que-
modo, &c.

And with these go their Cases depending on them.

2. Vocative Cases of Nouns or Pronouns.
If there be none of these in the Sentence, then in
the first Place stand Adverbs of Forbidding. Likeness,
or Relation: Or Conjunctions Causals, or Rationals:
as, *Ne, nequa, quam; quemadmodum, sicut; cum, quan-*
do, donec; quandoquidem, quare, &c.

Rule II. In the second Place (if any of the former
Sort of Words go before, else in the first Place) stands
that Substantive which is the Nominative Case to the
principal Verb Personal, or that which stands instead
of the Nominative Case to it.

And together with the Substantive goes the Adje-
ctive that agrees with it.

And if either the Substantive or Adjective do go
vern a casual Word, then together with the Substa-
tive or Adjective goes the casual Word govern'd of it
as also any other Word depending on it.

Rule III. Next to the Nominative Case and his I-
pendents stands the Verb Personal that agrees with

But if the Verb be an Impersonal, or a Verb
impersonally, then that, not having any Nominative
Case before it, begins the Sentence: as, *Tades me*
Hac olim meminisse juvabit, Virg.

And as the Nominative Case stands before the
of a Finite Mood; so the Accusative stands be-
fore the Verb of the Infinitive Mood: as, *Te vidisse incol*
gaudet.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 47

Rule IV Next to the Verb stands the Adverb (if there be any) of Place, Time, Quantity, Quality, &c. or the like.

But if there be no Adverb coming with the Verb, for the explaining of it, then next to the Verb stands the casual Word govern'd of the Verb; or the Infinitive Mood, if there be one, with his Dependents.

And if the Verb have several casual Words after it, which are govern'd of it, then the Dative goes before the Accusative, and the Accusative before the Genitive and Ablative: as, *Dono tibi hoc munus, Dona te hoc munere. Admoneto illum pristinae fortunae. Lupum auribus teneo.*

Rule V. After the Verb with his Dependents follows the Proposition, together with the casual Word govern'd of him and his Dependents: as, *Accipit in Teucros animum, mentemque benignum. Virg. Initia in potestate nostrâ sunt, de eventu fortunae judicat. Sen.*

Rule VI. After the Verb also with his Dependents follows the Ablative Case absolute, and what depends on it: as, *Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus.*

Though the Ablative Case absolute, as virtually containing a Verb in its Clause, may be set before the Verb too, as it may stand with most Convenience.

Note. 1st, Interrogatives and Relatives, govern'd of a Verb, come before a Verb that governs them.

Also they come before any other Word that governs them, except a Preposition.

And together with the Interrogative and Relative comes the casual Word, if it be express'd, that they agree with.

Also, if they be not govern'd of the Verb, then both they and the Word that they are govern'd of, mostly come before the Verb: as, *Cujus numen adoro. Quibus rebus adductus fecisti.*

Note, 2dly, If any thing be wanting, necessary to compleat the Construction, it is to be supply'd: as, *Ventum erat ad Vestæ, i. e. templum*

Note, 3dly, Figurative Construction is to be resolv'd into Proper: as, *Kille suum, i. e. Voluntas sui. Id genus alia, i. e. ejus generis.*

48 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

If the Teacher thinks not these Rules to be enow, or not plain enough, he may be pleas'd to frame Rules of himself more plain and full; or else consult *Rhenius de Naturali Ordine Constructionis*, in his *Gram. Lat.* p. 540, and *Voss. De ordine Grammatica*, in his *Gram. Lat.* p. 107. or Mr. *Brinsley*, in his *Ludus Literarius*, and Posing of the Accidence; or Dr. *Lewis*, in his *Grammar and Rules of Pointing, &c.*

For Practice, which, superadded to the Knowledge of these few general Rules, will in a manner do the whole Work, I advise, that the Teacher do contrive or chuse out some Sentences, wherein the Words are artificially plac'd, and cause his Scholars (himself looking on) to reduce those into the Natural Order. For Instance: Suppose the Scholars had this English to translate into Latin, *Of this Glory, O Caius Cæsar, which thou hast lately gotten, thou hast no Partner; the Way to do it right and surely, were to cast it into the Natural Order, O Caius Cæsar, thou hast no Partner of this Glory thou hast gotten lately.* To reduce Verses into Prose after this Manner, will be an useful Practice to this End; and the Labour will not be great; three or four Tryals to an ordinary Capacity will be sufficient.

When the Natural Order of the Words of the English is found, then let the Scholar seek out Latin Words for the English, and consider how to put them into a good Syntax. Which when he hath a while study'd upon, let him come before the Teacher, and do it *vivâ voce*, as well as he can, the Teacher rectifying him where he is amiss, and helping him on with that which he cannot do of himself. And still as the Learner goes on from Word to Word, let the Teacher require a Reason for his doing that Word next, and be often asking, What is next to be done; and why, and when done? Ask why it is, or ought to be thus done? And make the Learner understand a Reason, and know a Rule for what he doth. And for the Ease of the one, and Help of the other, I shall here set down some Directions to be used as Need shall be.

Directions

Directions for making plain Latin.

I. Read the Sentences carefully over, and mark the Points, and whether the Speech be Positive, Negative, Interrogative, Exclamative, or Admirative.

II. Observe whether there be in it any connexive Particles, which are to be made in the Order that they stand in, *viz* in the beginning of the Sentence. Yet where *enim* is made for *for*, some Word should be plac'd before it in the Latin; it not being usual to begin Sentences with that Word, though sometimes it be done.

III. Observe whether there be in the Sentence any Vocative Case: For next after the connexive Particles, if there be any, that is to be made; and if there be none, it is to be made first.

IV. Seek out the principal Verb, that usually is the first Verb. But if the first Verb have coming immediately before it a Relative; as, *that*, *who*, *whom*, *which*, &c. Or a Conjunction: as, *that*, *if*, &c. Or if it be the Infinitive Mood, then seek farther for another Verb.

1. *Note*, The Relative *that*, may be distinguish'd from *that* the Conjunction, by this, That the Conjunction hath ever a Nominative Case betwixt it and the following Verb; but the Relative hath none, unless when it self is not the Nominative Case to the Verb. Also the Relative *that* may be vary'd by *who*, *which*, or *whom*; but the Conjunction *that* cannot.

2. *Note*, Sometimes a Verb of the Infinitive Mood begins a Sentence, and then stands instead of the Nominative Case to the following Verb: as, *To rise betimes in a Morning, is a very wholesome Thing; Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est.*

V. When the principal Verb is found out, then seek out the Nominative Case to it; and, unless there be any Adverbs, or Conjunctions, or Vocative Case to be set down first, begin with that.

Note, That Word is the Nominative Case to the Verb, which, with good Sense, answers to the Question, *who*

50 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

who or *what*, made by the Verb: As in this Sentence, *A clear Conscience, which needeth no Excuse, feareth no Accusation*; to know what is the Nominative Case to the Verb *feareth*, the Way is to put the Word *what* to the Verb *feareth*; saying, *What feareth no Accusation?* To which Question, by reading the Sentence over again, it will appear what is to be answer'd, namely, That *a clear Conscience feareth no Accusation*; so the Word *Conscience* is the Nominative Case to the Verb.

VI. Having found out the Nominative Case to the Verb, consider of a Latin Word fit for it, and set it down, minding therewithal the Gender and the Number of it.

VII. Having set down the Nominative Case, consider whether any other Words come betwixt it and its Verb: If none come betwixt, then proceed to find out a Latin Word proper for the English Verb; and when you have consider'd what Mood and Tense it should be of, then make it agree with its Nominative Case in Number and Person; that is, if the Nominative Case (for Example) be of the Singular Number and third Person, then make your Verb to be of that Number and Person; and so what Number or Person soever your Nominative Case be, let your Verb be of the same Number and Person.

Yet, if the Nominative Case be a Collective Noun, or a Noun of Multitude, the Verb may be of the Plural Number, though the Nominative Case be but of the Singular: as, *Pars in frustra sicant*. Virg. *In me turba ruunt*. Ovid.

If any Words come between the Nominative Case and the principal Verb, then make into Latin whatsoever hath Dependence on the Nominative Case, namely,

1. That Substantive, if there be any that, as belonging to the same thing, agrees with it; and together with that, or rather immediately after that, make all those Words, if there be any, which depend on, or are govern'd of it; as in this Sentence, *Brennus, the Captain of the French, entering the*

Temple of Apollo, and spoiling it, was stricken with Madness, and flew himself; after [*Brennus*] the Nominative Case to the principal Verb [*was stricken*] is set down, must be made into Latin the Substantive [*Captain*], agreeing in Case with [*Brennus*], and next to that the Word [*French*] of the Genitive Case, govern'd of the foregoing Word [*Captain*].

2. That Adjective, whether Noun, Pronoun or Participle that agrees with it, if there be one; as in this Sentence, *A clear Conscience, which needeth no Excuse, feareth no Accusation.* The Word [*Conscience*] which is the Nominative Case to the Verb [*feareth*] being made into Latin, and set down, the next Word to be made, is the Adjective [*clear*] which agreeth with the Nominative Case.

Note. What is the Substantive to any Adjective, may be known, by adding the Word [*who*] or [*what*] to the Adjective; for the Word answering to the Question so made by the Adjective, will be the Substantive to it; as in the foregoing Sentence, by adding [*what*] to the Adjective [*clear*] and saying, by Way of Question, [*A clear what feareth no Accusation?*] it will, by reading the Sentence over again, be found, that the Word [*Conscience*] is the Substantive to the Adjective [*clear*].

Having found what is the Substantive to the Adjective, consider what Gender, Number, as well as what Case it is; and put the Adjective into the same Gender, Number, and Case, that the Substantive is of. And this is to be observ'd in all Parts of a Sentence, and not only in the Beginning of it.

After the Adjective is made to agree with his Substantive, then consider whether there do any Words come betwixt it and the principal Verb, which depend on it, or are govern'd of it; and if there do come any, then next after it make them; as in this Sentence, *Mordorus, spoiling Circe's Temple was stricken mad, with all his Soldiers:* After that the Participle [*spoiling*], which agreeth with the Substantive [*Mordorus*] is made, then must be made the Word [*Temple*]

52 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

ple govern'd of [*spoiling*] and the Word [*Circe's*], which is the Genitive Case, govern'd of [*Temple*] the former of the two Substantives.

Note, When two Substantives come together, if the former end in [*s*] then 'tis very likely that the former is the Genitive Case govern'd of the latter. And whether it be so or no, may be known, by putting away [*s*] from the End of the Word, and setting [*of*] before it, and reading before both the Substantive that follows it. Thus, if instead of [*Circe's Temple*] it be read [*the Temple of Circe*] it is visible, that *Circe* is the Genitive Case govern'd of [*Temple*] and that [*Circe's*] is put [*Circe*]

3. That Substantive (if there be any) that is govern'd of the foregoing Substantive in the Genitive or Ablative Case: As in this Sentence, *A Man of no Honesty, is worthy of no Trust*; after the Nominative Case [*A Man*] is made into Latin, the Words [*of no Honesty*] are next to be made into Latin; whereof the first [*of*] is but a Sign of the Case, and so is included in the Latin of the Word [*Honesty*]; the second Word [*no*] is an Adjective, agreeing with the following Substantive [*Honesty*], and therefore not to be made into Latin 'till the Word [*Honesty*], wherewith it agrees, be first made; for Substantives are always to be made into Latin before their Adjectives, unless Interrogative or Indefinite Speeches) so that the third Word [*Honesty*] govern'd of the foregoing Substantive [*Man*] is to be made into Latin thus, *Vir probitatis nullius*; or, *Vir probitati nullâ*.

4. That Relative (if there be any) which hath Reference to the foregoing Nominative Case, and what depends on it, which is a particular Clause, Branch, or Member of the Sentence: as in this Sentence, *A clear Conscience, which needeth no Excuse, feareth no Accusation*; the Relative [*which*] with the rest of that Clause depending thereon, viz. the Words [*needeth no Excuse*] is to be made into Latin next after the Nominative Case to the principal Verb, viz. the Word [*Conscience*] and his Adjective [*clear*]; thus, *Conscientia pura, qua excusatione non eget, accusationem non timet*.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 53.

VIII When you have made into Latin, not only the Nominative Case, but also all that depends both on it, and on the Words agreeing with, or govern'd by it, and is necessary or fit to be made into Latin together with it, or immediately after it, then proceed to make into Latin the principal Verb. And, as was said before, after you have, by the Form of the Word and by the Signs of the Tenses, found out what Mood and Tense the Verb is to be of, then make accordingly of that Mood and Tense; and also of what Number and Person, that the Nominative Case, herewith it agrees, is of.

The Number of the Nominative Case, is known by signifying one or more of the Things, or Persons, at it is the Name of.

The Person of the Nominative Case, if it have a Pronoun join'd with it namely one of these [*Ego, Tu, E, Nos, Vos, Illi*], is known by the Person of the Pronoun join'd with it. *Ego* and *Nos*, or *I* and *We*, being of the first Person, and so that Noun that is join'd with them: *Tu* and *Vos*, or *Thou* and *You*, being of the second Person, and so that Noun that is join'd with them: *Ille* and *Illi*, or *He* and *They*, (and so all other Pronouns) being of the third Person, and so those Nouns that they are join'd unto.

If the Noun, which is of the Nominative Case, have no Pronoun expressly join'd with it, it is to be consider'd what Pronoun it may have join'd with it, put to stand for it; and such Person as that Pronoun is, (which generally is of the third Person) such Person is the Nominative Case to be conceiv'd to be of, and in such Person the Verb to agree with.

Calliopius recensui, i. e. Ego.

Generally the Nominative Case comes before the Verb: Yet sometimes the Verb, or at least the Sign of the Verb is set before the Nominative Case, viz.

1. In Interrogative Speeches, wherein a Question is ask'd; as, *Lovest thou the King? Doth he love the King?*

2. In Verbs of the Imperative Mood, where something is commanded or permitted: as, *Love thou the King. Do thou love the King. Let us love the King.*

3. In

54 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

3 In certain Phrases or Forms of Speaking, where these Particles [*it*] or [*there*] are joyn'd with the Verb: as, *It is my Book; there came one to me.* Where [*Book*] the Nominative Case to [*is*] is in the former Sentence, and [*one*] the Nominative Case to [*came*] in the latter Sentence, is set after the Verb, whose Nominative Case it is, and with which it is to agree.

When [*it*] or [*there*] come with a Verb before a Noun, then mind whether that Verb be not a Verb Impersonal; (*i. e.* one of those Verbs commonly so call'd, and usually set without any Nominative Case before them) for [*it*] and [*there*] are Signs of an Impersonal Verb; and if it be, then the Word that seems to be the Nom. must be such Case as the Verb Impersonal doth govern: as, *There must be some body, Oportet esse aliquem.*

If the Nominative Case come after the Verb, or after the Sign of the Verb, then in writing down, or reading (*vivâ voce*) the English into Latin, write or read the Words in the Order they stand in, *viz.* first the Verb, then the Nominative Case: as, *Lovest thou the King? Amas tu Regem? Do thou love the King? Ama tu Regem? It is my Book, Est liber meus. There came one to me, Venit ad me quidam.*

Yet this Order is not always necessarily to be observ'd, but may sometimes be alter'd: as, *Tune amas Regem?* or, *Tu amas Regem? Liber meus est. Quidam ad me venit,* may well enough be said.

IX. When the Principal Verb is made, then consider what Word or Words follows it, in order to the making of them into Latin.

1. If an Adjective come after it, without any Substantive, then most likely that Adjective hath Reference to that Substantive which is the Nominative Case to the Verb; and if so, it's to be made also in the Nominative Case, (what Case soever the Verb doth govern after him) as, *Peter sleepeth void of care; Petrus dormit securus.* And however, it must, by putting the Word [*who* or *what*, &c.] to the English Adjective, be found out what Substantive the Adjective

refers

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 55

offers unto, with which, when found, the Adjective (as was said before) must be made to agree.

2. If a Substantive come after the principal Verb, (whether with or without an Adjective) in the same Clause or Member of the Period or Sentence it is then govern'd of the Verb, and is to be put in such Case as the Verb, by Virtue of its own Signification, or Use in Authors, or Rule in Grammar, requires to have after it, whether Genitive, Dative, Accusative, or Ablative.

And the same thing is to be consider'd or observ'd, touching all casual Words coming after all other Verbs, though they be not the principal in the Sentence.

3. If there come betwixt the Verb and the Substantive any casual Participle or Preposition, then it is to be consider'd, what Case Words are to be of which have those Particles or Prepositions coming before them; or what Case of a Noun that Verb, having this or that Particle, Sign, or Token after it, is by Grammar Rule to govern; and accordingly the English is to be made into Latin.

Casual Particles are, *of, to, for, in, into, with, through, from, by, &c.*

Grammar Rules, guiding to the Case of the Verb by the Token or Sign going before the Noun, are these, *All manner of Verbs put acquisitively, that is to say, with these Tokens, to or for after them, will have a Dative Case. All Verbs require an Ablative Case of the Instrument, with this Sign with before it.*

4. If there come more Substantives than one after a Verb, then it is to be consider'd, whether those Substantives do belong to the same, or to divers Things.

If they belong to the same Thing, then they are to be put in the same Case: as, *They drive away the Drones, a sluggish Cattle, from the Hives, Ignarum furcos pecus à præsepibus arcent.* This is as well to be observ'd concerning Substantives coming before the Verb.

If the Substantives belong to the same Thing, may be with good Sense and English, set betwixt them these Words, *who is*, or, *which is*, or, *which* (as here) *sluggish Cattle, the Drones*, which are a *sort of Cattle*.

If they belong to divers Things, then it is to be consider'd what respect each Substantive hath to the Verb; for one and the same Verb may, upon different Considerations, govern many and divers Cases, one of the Thing; another of the Person; another the Clause, Manner, Adjunct, Instrument, &c. *Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te presente, propria manu*; accordingly each Noun is to be put in such Case to the Verb, according to that Respect that the Noun hath to the Verb, doth require of the Noun.

If any casual Particle come betwixt the Noun, they belong to divers Things, and have different respects to the Verb: But if there come no casual Particle betwixt them, nor any Comma, or other Particle, then they belong to the same Thing, and have the same respect to the Verb, and are to be made by the same Case as was said before.

5. If there be any Substantive following the Verb that hath no respect to the Verb, then it is governed of some other Substantive or Adjective, or other Word coming betwixt the Verb and it; and such Case to the Substantive or Adjective, or other Word governing such Case is that Noun to be of.

This is to be observ'd also in all Parts of the Sentence, as well before, as after the Verb: For in all Parts of the Sentence, the following Word is governed of that governing Word that, in the Natural Order of the Words, goes next before it, in the same Clause or Part of the Sentence; except it be a Relative or Interrogative, &c. which, if they be not the Nominal Case, nor have a Preposition coming before them, never govern'd of some Word coming after them, what Case soever they be of.

The Natural Order of Words is that, according to which the Words are plac'd, so that Words, depending on others for their Gender, Number, Case,

son, Mood, &c. are set after those whereon they depend (as hath been shewn); which is not observ'd, but much gone contrary unto, in that Order of Words which is call'd Artificial.

6. If any other Verb come after the principal Verb, it is to be consider'd whether there does any casual Word expressly or implicitly come betwixt the foregoing and following Verb; and if no casual Word come betwixt, then the latter Verb is to be of the infinitive Mood; as, *I desire to learn.*

But if any casual Word, tho' but a Pronoun, come between the two Verbs, then, though the latter Verb may be the Infinitive Mood, (which if it be, then the casual Word foregoing is generally to be the Accusative Case) as, *I bid thee be gone*; or, *I bid that thou be gone, Jubes te abire*; *I am glad that you are in health, Gaudeo te valere*: Yet it may also be the Subjunctive Mood with *ut*, either express'd or understood together with it; (but then the casual Word foregoing must be the Nominative Case) as, *I bid thee be gone, Jubes ut tu abeas*: See that you have a good Heart, *ut habeas animum fortem*: Or with *quod* (accordingly as the Nature of the Verb shall require) as, *Quod tu valeas, gaudeo*. See *A Treatise of English Particles*, Chap. 75. Rule 3, 4. 8.

And if the foregoing Verb do govern a Dative Case, then the casual Word, coming before the latter Verb, (if it be made by the Infinitive Mood) may indifferently be put either in the Dative, as govern'd of the foregoing Verb, or in the Accusative, by reason of the Infinitive Mood following: So we may indifferently say, *Non licet homini*, ... or, *Non licet homini esse, ut vult*. See *A Treatise of English Particles*, Chap. 34. Rule 21.

7. If there come more Verbs than one, after the principal Verb, it is to be consider'd, whether the latter also of them, as well as the former, be govern'd of the principal Verb, or of some former that goes before it self, yet comes after the principal Verb.

If it be govern'd of the principal Verb, then some copulative Conjunction, expressly or implicitly, comes betwixt

58 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

betwixt it and the former Verb; and it is so to be made, as the former was, for Mood.

If it be not govern'd of the principal Verb, then it is to be govern'd either of some foregoing Verb or Noun Substantive, or Adjective, and is the Infinitive Mood, which may be vary'd by a Subjunctive Mood. See *Treat. of Eng. Partic.* c. 83. 1. 11. n. 7.

Note, Verbs are govern'd of Substantives and Adjectives, as well as of Verbs: as, *Sed jam tempus est id, quod institimus, a cadere*, Cic. *Itane es paratus facere omnia?* Ter. But this is a Grecism.

And this is to be observ'd also in all Parts of a Sentence or Period, and not only in the Body, or latter End of it, or after the principal Verb: *Audax omnis perpeti gens humana ruit per vetitum nefas* Hor. *Sed tantus amor casus cognoscere nostros*, &c. Virg.

X. If there be any Relative in the Sentence, then of every Relative is to be consider'd what it agrees with, and (if it be not the Nominative Case) what it is govern'd of.

The Agreement of the Relative is with its Antecedent, that is, a Substantive going before, which may again, without Interruption or Disturbance to the Sense, be repeated together with the Relative: as *Wretched is that Man, which is in Love with Money*; or, *Wretched is that Man, which [Man] is in Love with Money*. Here [Man] goes before [which] and is, or may be, repeated together with it.

To know what Word is the Antecedent to the Relative, add the Word [who, what, whose, or whom, &c.] to the Relative by Way of Question, and the Word that, upon reading the Sentence over again, with good Sense answers to that Question, is the Substantive Antecedent with which it agrees: as in this Example, *The Man is wise which speaketh false Things*. To know what is the Antecedent to the Relative [which], add the Word [what] to the Word [which], and then make a Question with those two Words, and the following Verb, saying, *which what speaketh?* The Answer whereto will be visibly this (upon reading the Sentence over again) *which Man* speaketh.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 59

asketh, so that [Man] is the Antecedent to the Relative [which.] For upon every such Question the Antecedent will be repeated in the Answer together with the Relative.

If the Word [that] be the Relative, turn it into [wh] or [which], &c. and then it will be the more easily found out what is the Antecedent Substantive where-with it is to agree: as, *Wretched is the Man that* [i. e. which] *is in Love with Money.*

Having found what Word is the Antecedent to the Relative, make it agree with it in Gender, Number, and Person, i. e. set it down of the same Number and Gender, and suppose it to be of the same Person with its Antecedent; and let the Person of the Relative appear by the Person of the Verb, to which the Relative is the Nominative Case, in making the Verb that hath the Relative for his Nominative Case, to be of that person which that Substantive is of that the Relative refers unto and agrees with. If the Relative be not the Nominative Case, then the Person of it is not to be heeded. The Relative is the Nominative Case to the Verb, when there comes no Nominative Case between the Relative and the Verb.

If the Relative be not the Nominative Case to the following Verb, nor have a Preposition coming with it, nor be together with his Substantive put absolute, then it is govern'd generally of the Verb that follows it, tho' sometimes of other Words, as may be seen in the Accidence Rules for the Case of the Relative.

The Relative that is govern'd of the Verb, must be of such Case as any other Substantive were to be of, if it follow'd the Verb; because a Substantive is ever imply'd in it, if not express'd with it.

If the Relative be not govern'd of the Verb, then, if it be a casual Word that the Relative is govern'd of, such Case as that Word would govern after it, of such Case must the Relative be of that comes before it: And that casual Word, of which the Relative is govern'd, must be such Case as the Verb will govern

60 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

vidi; Quorum optimum ego habeo. Unless here be some other Word in the Sentence, governing that Word of which the Relative is govern'd: as, *Qua nunc non est narrandi locus* Which Word yet is to be such Case as the Verb governs after it.

To know what Word the Relative is govern'd of.

To know what Word the Relative is govern'd of, (whether it be the Verb or other Word that governs it) the Way is, to put a Demonstrative in the Stead of it, and then read that Clause in which it stands, according to the Natural Order of the Words; for then the Word that governs the Demonstrative that is put instead of the Relative, will go before it; and that Word that governs the Demonstrative following it, is the Word that governs the Relative going before it.

For Example. In English, in this Sentence, [*you dispraise him, whom all Men commend*] if we take out the Relative [*whom*], and in the Stead of it put in the Demonstrative [*him*], and then read that Clause in which it stands, according to the Natural Order of the Words, thus, *All Men commend him*; it is plain that the Demonstrative [*him*] is govern'd of the Verb [*commend*]: And so by that it is known, that it is of that Verb that the Relative [*whom*] is govern'd. Thus also in Latin, in this Sentence, *Vir est, cui similem non vidi*, if, instead of the Relative [*cui*], we do put in the Demonstrative [*huic*], and then read that Clause into which it is put, in the Natural Order of the Words, thus, — *Non vidi similem huic*, it is plain that [*huic*] is govern'd of the Adjective [*similem*] going next before it. And by that it appears, that of that Adjective [*similem*] is the Relative [*cui*] govern'd.

How to bring Children to understand the greatest Difficulty about the Relative.

Yet farther, to bring Children by easy Steps to the understanding of that great Difficulty, which lies in putting the Relative into its right Case, Gender, and Number, wherein most usually they fail, the Teacher may be pleas'd, to take this Course with 'em.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 61

1. Give them Englishes, wherein the Antecedent Substantive, to which the Relative refers, shall not only go before the Relative, but be also repeated together with it: as, *He had a Knife, with which [Knife] he would have slain himself.*

2. Cause them in their daily Translations, to enclose within a Parathesis, or two square Brackets [] the repeated Substantive, wherewith the Relative, as being a perfect Adjective, must agree in Case, Gender, and Number, after this Form: *Ferrum habuit quo [ferro] se occideret.*

3. Cause them in the fair writing their whole Week's Exercises, to omit the Repetition of the Antecedent Substantive, yet in the construing thereof, (as also of their daily Lectures) to express it, as if it were written: As if, for Example, having written *Ferrum habuit quo se occideret*, they should, in construing, express *ferro* with *quo*; saying, *quo ferro, with which Knife.*

4. After they have been practis'd for some Time in this Kind of Exercise, then give them Englishes to translate, wherein the antecedent Substantive shall only be express'd in the Clause going before the Relative, and not repeated together with the Relative in the same Clause where it is: as, *He had a Knife, with which he would have slain himself.* Yet, in the translating them, cause them still to express the Substantive together with the Relative, *Ferrum habuit, quo [ferro] se occideret.* This will haunt them, wherever they meet with a Relative, even of Course to seek out a Substantive for it, to express together with it; of which Repetition of the Substantive together with the Relative, there be abundant Examples in Classick Authors. Such is that of Cicero's, *Cam videmus ex ea parte homines, cujus partis non vel principes numerabamus.* pro Quir. and that of Caesar's, *Legem promulgaverat: Quam lege regnum Iuba publicaverat.* 2 Bell. Civ. that of Terentius, *Habet bonorum exemplum, quo exemplo sibi licere id facere, quod illi fecerunt, putat.* Heaut. Prolog. and that of Plautus, *Est causa, quam causa simul mecum ire veritus est,* Epid. 1. 1. Yet this Rep-

62 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

tion it will be the Master's Discretion to order the Scholars to omit, as he shall see Cause.

5. Teach them to fill up such Elliptical Passages as have only that Case of the Substantive express'd; in which the Relative, coming together with it, doth agree, that wherein it might or ought to differ from it being omitted; thus, *Urbem quam statuo, vestra est*, i. e. *Urbs vestra est, quam urbem statuo*; or, *Quam urbem statuo, vestra urbs est*. So, *Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit*? *Quas dedit Eunuchus turbas, quem nobis dedisti Eunuchum*? Or, *Quas turbas dedit Eunuchus, quem Eunuchum dedisti nobis*? So, *Quis non malarum, quas amor curas habet, hac inter obliuiscitur*? i. e. *Inter hac quis non obliuiscitur curarum malarum, quas curas amor habet*? So, *Ad Casarem quam misi epistolam, ejus exemplum fugit me tum tibi mittere*, i. e. *Fugit me tum tibi mittere ejus epistola exemplum, quam ad Casarem misi epistolam*: So, *Quos pueros cum Mario miserant, epistolam mihi attulerunt hoc exemplo*, i. e. *Pueri illi hoc exemplo mihi attulerunt epistolam quas pueros cum Mario miserant*.

6 Give them such Englishes for Translation, as shall have in them Man or Thing (either express'd or understood in the Pronoun put for them) to be the Substantive wherewith the Relative must agree: as, *Wretched is he* [i. e. *the Man*] *that is in Love with Monty*, *Miser est* [homo] *qui* [homo] *nummoli admiratur*. *That* [i. e. *that Thing*] *is good which* [i. e. *which Thing*] *all* [Things] *desire*; *Bonum illud est quod omnia appetunt*.

Thus by easy Steps will Children be brought, not only to understand how to render those Relative Particles, *that, who, which whose, whereof, whom, &c.* in right Case, Gender, or Number, [than the doing of which there is scarce any Thing more hard to them] but also to overcome the greatest Difficulties that lie in the regimen of the Relative. And now I return, to go on with those Directions for plain Latin-making which yet remain.

XI If the Speech be negative, then observe to set the negative Particles before the Verb. The negative

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 63

f the Verb, if any Sign of the Verb be express'd: as, *do not perceive what your Intent is.* But if no Sign of the Verb be express'd, then it comes after the Verb: as, *I perceive not what your Intent is; Ego, quid agas, nihil intelligo*

XII. Interrogative Speeches have the same Observations mostly that are in assertive Speeches. The Interrogative Pronominal Particles being Nominative Cases to Verbs, and being govern'd of a Preposition before them, or else of a Verb, or some other Word coming after them: as, *Quis enim erat qui non sciret? Quid hoc impudentius dici, aut fingi potest? Quae civitati ista est injuria? Quantos fluctus excitari concionum videas? Cui quæso tandem probasti? Cui novæ calamitati locus illis relictus esset.*

XIII. In admirative or exclamative Speeches, casual Words are put into divers Cases, without any Verb express'd to govern them in such Case, by Virtue of the article of admiring or exclaiming, according as Use hath subjoin'd such and such Cases unto such and such articles, or as that Verb governs, which is understood together with the Verb.

Of the Ablative Absolute.

XIV. When a Substantive comes together with a participle (express'd or understood) in the same Clause, and neither is the Nominative Case to any following Verb, nor hath before it any other Word of which it is govern'd, then it is put absolute, and so is to be made by the Ablative Case, as, *The King coming, the Enemies fled; Rege veniente, hostes fugerunt.*

Note, If any other Nominative Case, tho' but of a pronoun, come between the Substantive that hath a participle join'd to it, and the Verb, then that Substantive is not the Nom. Case to the Verb. But if no Nominative come betwixt, then it is (not put absolute, but) the Nom. Case to the Verb: as, *The King coming made the Enemies fly; Rex veniens hostes fugavit.*

In speaking of this Ablative Case, I follow the received Way, not being ignorant what is thought by learned Persons of that Construction; namely, that it is govern'd of some Preposition understood, viz. *ab*

64 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

ab, sub, cum, or in. See *Treat. of Engl. Parr. c. 20. r. 1. n. 3.*

Well now, when the Learner is able, what by his own Study, and what by these Directions, and what by his Teacher's further Instruction, where it is needful. to read the English into Latin *vivâ voce*, then let him go and write it down in a loose Paper, and bring it to his Teacher, to consider of his Manner of writing and pointing it; who is accordingly to inform him of what he knows not, and rectify him in what he sees amiss.

That being done let the Master cast the Words out of the Natural into the Artificial Order, and mend the Phrase, if need be, and then cause the Scholar to transcribe the Exercise so done into his fair Book, and after that get it to construe, and parse, and say by heart.

As in translating it out of English into Latin, he observ'd the Natural Order of the Words, so in construing (as it is call'd) out of Latin into English, let him exactly, as far the Idiom of the Language will permit, observe the Natural Order of the Words.

Let the Scholar's parsing be perform'd all by himself alone, taking the Words in the Natural Order, and going of himself (without being ask'd any Thing by his Teacher, save where he omits any Thing necessary) from Word to Word, 'till he have gone over the whole; declining Nouns and Verbs, and giving Rules for the Genders of the one, and preterperfect Tense and Supines of the other; and so of the other Parts of Speech, let him say what is fit to be said. But especially let him give Account of the *Syntax* of every Word; why this Substantive is of the Nominative Case, that of the Genitive, the other the Dative, Accusative, or Ablative. Why this Adjective is of this, that of the other Case, Gender, Number; why this Relative is of this, or that Number, or Person; and why of this or the other Case, and what governs it; and why this Verb is of this Mood, Number, Person, &c. maintaining and justifying every Thing by Grammar-Rule, or Examples from Classick Authors.

And here, by the Way, let me take Occasion to advise that the same Course be observ'd in his Authors that he learn

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 65

learns, construing his Lectures then in the Natural Order, and parsing them all by himself alone in that Order. It is scarce imaginable how much more beneficial this way of parsing alone, is beyond the other more usual Way of asking Questions, skipping here a Word, and there a Word, according to the Master's Pacey, List or Leisure. And if there be more than one together, one may take one Piece, and another another Piece by Courses, 'till all be done. If one by Agreement do get one Piece, and another another, it will not be much amiss to wink at it for a while: 'til they be a little perfect at it; that Plot is quickly broke, by putting them but once or twice out of their Road.

Lastly, To return, on the Repetition-Day, let the Scholar say all his Week's Work by Heart, and both read it out of English into Latin, and out of Latin into English; and where the Teacher thinks needful, let him ask him a Rule for, or a Reason of, the Construction, or the like.

*English Examples, fram'd according to the Rules of
the Three Latin ConCORDS.*

THE FIRST CONCORD.

Concordantia Nominativi & Verbi.

VERbum personale co-
hæret cum Nomi-
nativo numero & perso-
na: ut, *Nunquam sera est
ad bonos mores via. Fortuna
nunquam perpetuo est bona.*

* A Verb Personal agreeeth with his Nomina-
tive Case in Number and
Person: as, *Præceptor legit,
vos verò negligitis*, The Ma-
ster readeth, and ye regard
not.

* And the Nominative
Case shall, in making and
construing Latin, be set
before the Verb.

† Examples, where Per-
sonal Pronouns are only
Nominative Cases.

Indicative Mood Present
Tense Active with a Sign.

*I do fear, thou dost laugh,
he doth strike, we do cry, ye
do call, they do answer.*

D 4

Wich

66 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

Without a Sign.

*I love, thou teachest, he
readest, we hear, ye learn,
they play.*

Indic Pres. Pass.

*I am loved, thou art
taught, he is read, we are
called, ye are stricken, they
are sighted.*

*I am blighted, thou art sold,
he is beaten, we be blamed,
ye be wounded, they be healed.*

Preterimperf. Tense Act.

*I did lose, thou didst seek,
he did find, we did sit, ye aid
stand, they did walk.*

*I mourned, thou weepedst,
he laughed, we sung, ye
leaped, they danced.*

Passive

*I was named, thou wast
called, he was approved, we
were warned, ye were scour-
ged, they were killed.*

*I was girded, thou wast
armed, he was cut, we were
hurt, ye were led, they were
drawn.*

Preterperf. Active.

*I have fought, thou hast
overcome, he hath washed,
we have wiped, ye have
scratched, they have bitten.*

*I have mown, thou hast
reaped, he hath scattered,
we have gathered, ye have
laid up, they have carried
out.*

Passive.

*I have been carried, thou
hast been bound, he hath*

*been blamed, we have been
praised, ye have been healed,
they have been saved.*

*I have been honoured,
thou hast been crowned, she
hath been decked, we have
been painted, ye have been
nursed; they have been
cloathed.*

Preterpluperf. Active.

*I had cryed, thou hadst
consented, he had said, we had
believed, ye had held, they
had escaped.*

*I had written, thou hadst
received, she had read, we
had recalled, ye had replied,
they had granted.*

Passive.

*I had been seen, thou
hadst been heard, he had been
accused, we had been con-
demned, ye had been saved,
they had been killed.*

*I had been baptized, thou
hadst been confirmed, she had
been instructed, we had been
corrected, ye had been ad-
monished, they had been
commended.*

Future Tense Active.

*I will ask, thou wilt an-
swer, he will have, we will
hold, ye will command, they
will obey.*

*I shall touch, thou shalt
perceive, she shall crave, we
shall give, ye shall feign,
they shall frame.*

Passive.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar 67

Passive.

*I will be sought, thou
will be found, he will be ta-
ken, we will be freed, ye will
be detained, they will be dis-
missed.*

*I shall be eased, thou shalt
be burdened, she shall be re-
ceived, we shall be rejected,
ye shall be commended, they
shall be lamented.*

* Except a Question be
asked, and then the Nomi-
native is set after the Verb.

*Love I? teachest thou?
understandeth he? hear we? learn
ye? play they?*

*Fear'd I? laugh'st thou?
strikest he? cry we? called
ye? answered they?*

* Or after the Sign of
the Verb: as,

*Amas tu? Lovest thou?
Venitne Rex? Doth the
King come?*

*Do I play? dost thou learn?
doth he profit? do we see?
do ye hear? do they feel?*

*Did I lose? didst thou seek?
did he find? did we sit? did
ye stand? did they walk?*

*Have I fought? hast thou
overcome? hath he read?
have we heard? have ye
sung? have they danced?*

*Had I tryed? hadst thou
consented? had he said? had
we believed? had ye staid?
had they departed?*

*Shall I ask? wilt thou
answer? will he have? shall*

*we hold? shall ye command?
will they obey?*

*Am I loved? art thou
feared? is he called? are
we heard? be ye stricken?
be they frightened?*

*Was I touch'd? wert thou
named? was he warn'd?
were we blamed? were ye
scourged? were they killed?*

*Have I been honour'd?
hast thou been fed? hath she
been nurs'd? have we been
deck'd? have ye been cloth-
ed? have they been spoil'd?*

*Had I been heard? hadst
thou been seen? had she been
condemned? had we been sa-
ved? had ye been killed?
had they been buried?*

*Shall I be touch'd? wilt
thou be perceiv'd? shall he
be sought? shall we be
found? will ye be led? will
they be drawn?*

* Likewise if the Verb
be of the Imperative
Mood: as, *Amato ille, let
him love.*

*Write thou, fight he, eat
ye, drink they; sing thou,
dance he, write ye, read
they; do thou go, let him
stay, run we, do ye sit, let
them stand.*

*Laugh thou, shout he, let us
sleep, walk ye, let them ride.*

Passive.

*Be thou ruled, let him be
broken, be we held, be ye
bound, let them be scourg'd.*

68 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

Be thou loved, be he feared, let us be tamed, be ye enriched, be they advanced.

* And sometimes when this Sign, *it*, or *there*, cometh before the English of the Verb, as, *Est liber meus*, it is my Book; *Venit ad me quidam*, there came one to me.

It is a Horse, there was a Mare, it is Night, it was Day; there blows Wind, there falls Rain, there comes a Man, there went a Woman; it is I, it was thou, it had been he, it may be we, it might be ye, it shall be they.

* Yet it is not necessary, that in all these Cases the Nominative be always set after a Verb; for *Tu eras*? may as well be said, as *Eras tu*? *Liber est*, as *Est Liber*.

Potential Mood Present Tense.

I may command, thou mayest intreat, he may weep, we may laugh, ye may fight, they may overcome.

I may be touched, thou mayest be tickled, he may be burned, we may be buried, ye may be covered, they may be concealed.

Preterimperfect Tense.

I might say, wouldst thou believe? should he read? we ought to learn, could ye

see? they should think should I be commended? thou wouldst be dispraised, ought he to be despised? we should be blamed, ye would be condemned, ought they to be punished?

Preterperfect Tense.

I might have thought, thou wouldst have believed, he should have said, ought to have understood, should have perceived, thou would have pronounced.

I should have been afflicted, thou wouldst have bewailed, he ought to have been vexed, we should have been freed, he would have been oppressed, they ought have been warned.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

I had felt, thou had feared, he had needed, had believed, ye had conceived, they had gone.

I had been compared, thou hadst been preferred, he had been refused, we had been chosen, ye had been accused, they had been rejected.

Future Tense.

I shall have eaten, will have drunk, he will have spoken, we shall have sinned, ye will have sinned, they shall have repented.

I shall have been satisfied, thou shalt have been fed, he shall have been fed,

shall have been filled, ye shall have been honoured, they shall have been feared.

* Examples where Nouns are the Nominative Cases; and first Nouns Substantives Proper.

Peter sleepeth, Paul prayeth, Joseph ariseth, Mary runneth, Thomas doubteth, John believeth.

Elizabeth rejoiced, Lydia did hearken, Cæsar fought, Pompey fled.

Cicero hath entreated, Cato had resisted. Antony shall drink, Ovid will write.

The Horace's kill. The Curiaces are killed. The Decius's died. The Fabius's were slain. The Romans have conquer'd. The Parthians have been vanquish'd.

The Persians will flee. The Macedonians shall pursue. The Arabians shall be affrighted. The Egyptians will be destroy'd.

Doth George speak? Did Thomas hear? Hath Edward taught? Had Richard learned? Will Robert profit?

Weeps Cleopatra? Sighs Helena? Do the Trojans mourn? Did the Grecians sing? Have the Athenians fought? Had the Lacedæmonians fled? Will the

Gauls be beaten? Shall the Spaniards be quieted.

Would the Hunns have been drown'd? Might the Scythians have been slayed? Could the Carthaginians have been destroy'd? Should the Itatians have been enriched? Ought the Britons to have been robbed.

Secondly, Noun Substantives Common.

And first without any Particle annex'd.

Fire burneth, Wood is burned, Night hideth, Day discloseth, Winter wasteth, Spring draweth on, Summer approacheth, Harvest is ended.

Wine is drunk, Bread is baked, Meat is eaten, Flesh is roasted, Corn is sown, Hay is mown.

Doth Gold glisten? Did Silver ring? Hath Brass rusted? Will Glass break? Is Iron heated? Was Lead melted? Hath Copper been beaten? Had Tin been run? Shall Pewter be scower'd? Milk is curd'd, Cream is streined, Butter is churned, Cheese is pressed, Curds are sweetened, Cheese Cakes are baked, Trees grow, Flowers smell, Leaves shoot, Apples ripen, Pears hang, Plums fall, Berries rot.

Boughs are shaken, Cherries are picked, Walnuts are dashed.

dash'd, small Nuts are gather'd, shells are crack'd, Kernels are eaten.

Swans sung, Cocks crow'd, Hens cackl'd, Chickens chirp'd, Pies chattered.

Men fought, Women scold'd, Boys wrestl'd, Girls scratch'd, Children cried, Servants laugh'd.

Let Knaves be cudgell'd, let Rogues be scourg'd, let Beggars be whipp'd, let Drunkards be fin'd, let Thieves be hang'd, let Rebels be behead'd, Should Scolds be duck'd? Would Whores be sham'd? Ought Whore-masters to be geld'd? Could Adulterers be brand-ed?

Travellers will talk, Soldiers will brag, Lawyers will wrangle, Merchants will complain, Scholars will dispute, Fools will prate.

Have Eyes seen? Have Ears heard? Have Noses smelt? Have Tongues tast'd? Have Hands felt?

Hath Musick pleas'd? Had Learning flourish'd? Will Honour be sought? Shall Virtue be honour'd? Will Vice be punish'd?

Arts are learn'd, Ignorance is banish'd, Servants are beaten, Slaves are sold, much is spoken, little is minded, nothing is done, all is lost.

Secondly, with the Participle [a] annex'd.

A Dog barketh, a Thief trembleth, a Lyon roared, a Hare started, a Partridge flew, a Hawk pursued, a Sword hath cut, a Spear hath pierc'd, a Mouse had slept, a Cat had watch'd, a Bird will fly, a Fish will swim

Is a Pen made? Was a Book written? Hath a Pen-knife been whett'd? Had a Line been drawn? Will a Blot be wip'd out? Shall a Whetstone be rubb'd? May a Sponge be squeez'd.

Thirdly, with the Participle [the] annex'd.

The Father doth sing, the Mother laugheth, the Child playeth.

The young Man leaped, the old Man danced.

The Lamb doth frisk, the Ewe did bleat, the Bull hath low'd, the Ox had labour'd, the Sow shall farrow, the Pig will squeak.

The Hog is fatted, the Heifer was kill'd, the Deer hath been hunt'd, the Horn had been wind'd, the Huntsman will be weary'd, the Hunting shall be end'd.

Is the King crown'd? Were the Rebels vanquish'd? Have the Soldiers been honour'd? Had the Rebels been subdu'd? Will the Cl.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 71

*Can we be oppressed? Shall the
Countrymen be burdened?*

*Let the Fathers command,
let the Children obey, let the
Commanders direct, let the
Soldiers fight.*

The Husbands may labour,

*the Wives should care, the
Servants should work, the
Children could play.*

*The Swallows may have
come, the Woodcocks might
have stayed, the Cranes shall
have departed.*

THE SECOND CONCORD.

Concordantia Substantivi & Verbi.

¶ **A**djectivum cum Substantivo, Genere, Numero, & Casu consentit: ut, Juv. *Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima Cygno.*

¶ Ad eundem modum Participia & Pronomina Substantivis adnectuntur: Ovid. *Donec eris felix multus numerabis amicos. Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes.* Senec. *Non hoc primum pectora vulnus, mea senserunt: graviora tui.*

* The Adjective, whether it be Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, agreeth with his Substantive in Case, Gender, and Number: as, *Amicus certus in re incerta cornitur*, A sure Friend is try'd in a doubtful Matter; *Homo armatus*, A Man armed; *Ager colendus*, A Field to be tilled; *Hic vir*, This Man; *Mens hucus est*, It is my Master.

English Examples.

I. Where the Adjective comes together with the Substantive set next after it.

A good Man is a wise Man; and an evil Man is a foolish Man.

A black Swan is a rare Bird; and a white Crow is a strange Sight.

The evil Life of a good Preacher brings great Disgrace to sound Doctrine.

Evil Words corrupt good Manners; and evil Manners destroy great Kingdoms.

Soft Fire makes sweet Malt; and sweet Malt makes sweet Ale.

A tall Man, with a long Neck, in a white Doublet, killed two Sparrows sitting on an high House, with one Stone.

The untimely Death of a loving Husband, is a bitter Foe

72 *The Art of Teaching improv'd,*

Fountain of much Grief to a kind Wife.

The eager Contention of disagreeing Princes, is the sad Destruction of flourishing States.

My Son loves thy Daughter: and your Daughter is in Love with my Son.

Our Lad is gone to your House: and your House is quite gone to Decay.

Your Master is gone with his Wife to his Garden; and our Children with their Hands pluck up fine Flowers.

She views her wrinkled Face in a broken Glass, and washeth her yellow Teeth with red Wine.

He holds three Eggs in one Hand, and reads a long Letter in a little Space.

When civil Wars cease, then expect happy Times; and when happy Times return, then expect civil Wars.

II. Where the Adjective comes together with the Substantive set next before it.

A House full of Gold coined, would not make a Miser rich.

A Temple adorned with Pictures innumerable, was to be seen on a Hill's Top.

A Tongue speaking Things shameful, bringeth to the Speaker Things harmful.

Water flowing from a

Fountain inclosed, run in a Channel newly digged.

A Wife bemoaning a Husband dead, sits besides Children weeping.

A Traytor ready to shed Blood Royal, deserves to be cut off by a Death untimely.

A Conscience wounded, is a Burden insupportable.

Land fruitful and well tilled, brings a Crop plentiful in a Year seasonable.

III. Where the Adjective is parted from his Substantive coming before it.

A Kingdom is happy when Peace is preserv'd carefully, and Justice administer'd duly.

The Man went away sorrowful, when he saw that a Woman lay weeping upon the Ground

Wisdom is accounted vain where Vice is found to be gainful.

The Shepherd is said to be diligent, when the Flock is thriving.

Where the Teacher is skillful and painful, there the profiting of the Learner is hopeful.

IV. Where the Adjective is parted from the Substantive coming after it.

Happy are the Times, when Truth and Peace do flourish.

Glorious in all Ages will

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 73

be a wise, righteous, and valiant King.

Hateful is the Name, woful is the Life, and fearful is the Death of a Traytor.

Fair is thought the Child by the fond Mother.

Terrible, Men say, will be the Sentence of the last Judgment.

Unquenchable, it is believ'd, shall the Fire of Hell be.

Great is the Peace of an undisturb'd Conscience.

Mine is the Comfort, thine will be the Glory of Deeds well done.

Adjectives of a Comparative Degree, with their Substantives.

Yellow Gold is more precious than white Silver.

Despis'd Virtue is more shewable than honour'd Vice.

Cicero was eloquenter than Cato; but Cato was constanter than Cicero.

Of the two Kingdoms, Spain is the larger, but France is the richer.

Unjust Peace is better than a just War; and War Abroad is more desirable than War at Home.

A little with Quietness is more desirable than a great deal with Vexation.

The Sea is deeper than a Bucket, and Eternity is longer than Time.

Adjectives of the Superlative Degree with their Substantives.

The shortest Day hath the longest Night.

The holiest Life may expect the happiest Death; and the best Work hope for the biggest Reward.

The learnedest Clerks are not always the wisest Men; nor are the best Preachers evermore the holiest Christians.

Cicero was the most eloquent of Pleaders; but Cæsar was the most prudent of Commanders.

Solomon was the wisest of Kings; and Hercules was the strongest of Men.

Socrates was accounted the wisest of Philosophers; and Alexander the most fortunate of Conquerors.

Aristides was the justest among the Grecians; and Crassus the richest among the Romans.

THE THIRD CONCOR

Concordantia Relativi & Antecedent

* **W**HEN ye have a Relative, ask the Question *wh* or *what*? the Word that answers to the Question, shall be the Antecedent to it.

The Antecedent most commonly is a Word that goeth before the Relative, and is rehears'd again of the Relative.

The Antecedent is sometimes rehears'd again expressly with the Relative in the same Clause that it is in: as,

Cum viderem ex ea parte homines, cujus partis nos vel principes numerabamur. Cic.

Diem scito esse nullum, quo die non dico pro reo. Cic.

Legem promulgaverat, qua lege regnum Juba publicaverat. Cæs.

So in English.

I have a Horse, which Horse is twenty Years old.

He bought a House, of which House his Grandfather had been the Owner.

Thou hast a Friend, to which Friend thou mayest commit all thy Secrets.

A certain Bird was sitting on a Tree, which Bird one selected thence with a Stone.

I have a Dog, & Dog no Lyon is mo

† And when cedent is rehear ther with, the Re is of the same as well as of the s der, and Num Person that the dent is of; as in nam'd Examples

But mostly cedent is not set in the same Cla the Relative, bu ther Clause befo stant from it; a as it sometimes b be of the same it, so many Tim fers in Case from

¶ Relativum c cedente concordi numero & pers *Vir bonus est quis? fulta patrum, qui que servat?*

* The Relativ with his Antece Gender, Number, son: as, *Vir sapi ca loquitur*: Tha wise that speal Things or Words

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 75

English Examples.

Thou hatest me without a Cause, who am thy best Friend in the World.

I love thee dearly, who yet are most unkind to me.

Despise thou me, who am the Queen of Beauties?

He marry'd his Daughter, whom he had so dearly loved, to an unworthy Person.

They persecute us innocent Men, who have done Good to them.

We Fathers love you Children, who are obedient unto us.

Husbands love us Wives, who are kind to them.

We Men honour you Women, who adorn your selves with Virtue and Modesty.

I cannot but love that Man dearly, who hath been kind to me in my Adversity.

I cannot but keep that Mare well, which hath saved me in Time of Danger.

I cannot but think that Kingdom happy, which is govern'd by a just and merciful King.

Happy are those Kings whom Subjects love, and Enemies fear.

Miserable are those Countries, which War and Famine do vex or waste.

Glorious are those Times, in which Peace and Truth do flourish.

Now when the Teacher discerns his Scholar by this Practice to be any Thing perfect at understanding and finding out the Natural Order of Words; and that he can make a Piece of ordinary English into plain and true Latin in that Way, then let him put forward to make his Latin good as well as true. Now that will be done by teaching him some Competency and Skill in these five Things, viz. 1. The Artificial Order of Words. 2. The Use of Phrases. 3. The Variation of Phrases. 4. The Elegancies of the Particles. 5. The Idioms of both Languages English and Latin. Of all which I shall speak something in order.

C H A P. V.

*Of the Artificial Order, and Elegant Pl
of Words.*

THE Artificial Ordering and Elegant Plac
Words conduceth very much to the maki
Latin good. To evince this, if there were Ne
might suffice to say that of the very same W
according to the different placing of them, m
made Latin very elegant, or very unelegant.
Instance, the Words *Rogo, ut venias ad me*, w
very elegant, if placed thus, *Rogo, ut ad me ut*
or thus, *Ad me, ut venias, rogo*; or thus, *Ut
venias rogo*; or thus, *Ad me, rogo, ut venias*. But
unelegant, if placed thus: *Rogo ut me venias a*
Rogo ad me venias ut; or *Rogo me venias ut ad*
thus, *Rogo me venias ad ut*; or, *Ut me venias rogo*
or, *Ut venias me rogo ad*: or indeed almost, if n
together, any other Way. That the Learner t
fore may have some Skill in that Art, let the Te
give him some Rules. And when he hath ma
English into plain true Latin, according to the
usual Order, let him then, according to his R
transpose and p'ace it in the Artificial Order
when he hath done, shew it to the Master, who
shew him where he fails, and to amend what h
stakes in; and this done, let him again transcri
into his fair Book, and then commit it to Mem
as before.

For the Ease of the Teacher, and Use of the
ner, I shall here set down a Collection of Rule
Artificial Ordering and Elegant Placing of Word

Rules of placing Words.

Rule 1. And first of the Parts of a compou
Word. The Parts of a compounded Word m
elegantly divided by some other Word coming bet
the Parts: as, *Rem Vero publicam amissimus, Cae*

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 77

juris quoque Consultis. Suet. Quod judicium cunque. Cic. Me certe in omnibus rebus satis nostræque conjunctioni amorique facturum — Cic. Prius, inquit, quàm, hoc circulo excedas. Val. Max. Coturnices ante veniunt quàm Prætores fuissent. Cic. Per mihi gratum erit — Cic. Art. 5. 10. Cum tu argento post omnia ponas, Hor. Sat. 1. 1.

Secondly of Words in a Sentence.

The Relative, though of the Nominative Case, stands in the Beginning of his own Clause.

Rule 1. The Words that go together in the Natural Order, are parted asunder in the Order Artificial, and the govern'd come before those that govern; *viz* the oblique Cases in the Beginning, the Verb in the End, and the Nominative Case in the Middle betwixt both: as,

Munitissimam hostium civitatem Cæsar occupavit.

Petulantibus bonus lingua consectari desine.

Rule 2. The Substantive of the Genitive Case, is elegantly set before the Substantive that governs it: as, *Immortalis amore flagravit, Cic. Cum ipse victoria conditione jure omnes vincti occidissimus, clementiæ tuæ judicio conservati sumus. Cic.*

Rule 3. The Adjective is usually set before the Substantive: as, *Ampla domus, dedecori domino sæpe fit. Cic. Tenacissimi sumus eorum, quæ rudibus oculis percipimus. Quintil.*

Exceptions.

Yet several Sorts of Adjectives are sometimes elegantly set after their Substantives.

Except. 1. Notes of Universality, whether Affirmative or Negative: as, *omnis, nullus, and nemo*: as, *Virutis laus omnis in actione consistit. Cic. Ut ad te scribendi meo arbitratu, facultas nulla detur, Cic. Hujus igitur criminis; te accusante, mentio nulla fiet. Cic. Majus mihi dare beneficium nullum potes. Cic. So Nemo. At verò hujus gloriæ, C. Cæsar, quam est in paulo ante adeptus, socium habes neminem. Cic.*

Note,

Note. Of these *omnis* and *nemo* come elegant End of a Sentence : as, *Ad quam hæc referendia.* Cic. 1. Off. 15. *Ea liberalitate utamur, et amicis, noceat nemini.* Id. ib. *Eundem hunc umstibus metui, præterea neminem.* Cic. pro Leg. *Quis legatos unquam audivit sine Senatusconsulto nemo.* Cic. in Vatin. So *Nullum grave est hoc Verrem : grave, me agente : te accusante, nullum Cæcilium.*

Except. 2. Cardinal Numerals : as, *Dies circ decim iter fecerunt.* Cæf. *Ad hominum mil undique cægit.* Cæf. *Ompes omnium charit una complexa est.* Cic.

Except. 3. Comparatives and Superlatives, the End of a Sentence many times stand very ly : as, *Nihil illo regno spoliatus, nihil rege egen Fieri que studebam ejus prudentia doctior.* Cic. *rem liberatissimum, et ætem opportunissimam con nem certè singularem.* Cic. *Hesterno die præm Allobrogum, Titoque Vultureo dedistis Ampliss Cat. 4. Hanc ego subtilitatem, Philosophia quide simam judico, sed ab eorum causa, qui ita disserv tissimam,* Cic. Ac 4. 14

Except. 4. Pronominals : as, *Ardeo cupi credibili, neque ut ego arbitror reprehendend nostrum scriptis illustretur & celebretur tuis. Ci ingenis nostris semina innata vitutum.* Cic.

Except. 5. Adjectives of two Syllables, if stantives be of more Syllables : as, *Quis anim det eum, quem impurè ac flagitiosè putet.* Cic. *Quæ res habet inflationem magnam.* Cic.

Rule 4. Betwixt the Adjective and the S several Things are elegantly inserted.

Sec. 1. If the Substantive and Adjective l Genitive Case, then the former Substantive v elegantly between them : as, *Quid credas ali divina partem mentis his inesse?* Quint. de forea clementia *Majestatis pacem & tranquillit vinciis dedit.* *Philosophia omnium mater A Cic.*

Self. 2. If the Substantive and Adjective be not of the Genitive Case, then the Substantive of the Genitive Case will come elegantly betwixt them : as, *Hæc est vera justitiæ laus* — *Ob inclytam viri religionem.* Flor.

Self. 3. If the Substantive be govern'd of any Preposition, the Preposition will come elegantly between the Substantive and the Adjective : as, *Certâ de causâ nondum adducor ut faciam.* Cic. *Hoc assequere, ut quem in partem accipias minus laborem.* Cic. *Ei nullâ in re deficit.* Cic. *Quam ob rem venerim, dicam.* Plut.

Self. 4. If the Substantive be not govern'd of any Preposition, yet a Preposition with his casual Word, may elegantly come between the Adjective and his Substantive : as, *Casta ad virum matrona parendo imperat.* Publ.

Self. 5. Between the Adjective and the Substantive may elegantly be set not only Nouns and Prepositions alone, or with their Cases; but single Words of any Sort almost : as, Pronoun. *Quamcumque ei fidem dederis, præstabo.* Cic. *Queruntur accusatores se idoneos non habere,* Cic. *Ego post supplicationes mihi decretas in Dalmatiam profectus sum.* Cic. *Subcissiva quædam tempora incurrunt, quæ ego perire non patior.* Cic. Verb. *Hoc affirmo, & hoc pace dicam tuâ.* Cic. Adverb. *Maximam vero partem, quasi suo jure fortuna sibi vindicat.* Cic. *Neque ulla unquam ætas de tuis laudibus conticescet.* Cic. Preposition. *Quo in negotio tamen illa me res, Judices, Consolatur.* Cic. Yea Clauses : as, *Magnum profecto laborem Cæsar assumpsit, quem ferme ab ipsis ad nos venisse Gadibus aiunt, ut hostes sua quidem Majestati rebelles, nostris autem supra modum rebus infestos armis subigeret.* *Quam ob causam perpetuum illi amorem & gratiam debemus immortalem.*

Note, If any Thing come between the Substantive and the Adjective, then may either indifferently be set before the other.

Rule 9. The Relative *qui* is elegantly set before the prefixed Substantive, to which it refers, as, *qui*

D The ART of Teaching *improvy* —,

ly if any other Words come between: as, *Quem cum sto sermonem habueris, procul stans accepi.* Proprium, *quem* sibi ipse sinxerat, *principatum.* Cic.

Note, If *qui* in one Clause of a Sentence answer *hic*, *is*, or *idem* in another Clause; that Clause which *qui* is, will very elegantly come first. *Quod puerum vidisti formosum, hunc vides deformem senectà:* Varro. *Qui semel verecundiæ fines transierit; cum bene & graviter oportet esse impudente* Cic. *Qui dolet rebus alicujus adversis, idem alicui etiam secundis dolet.* Cic. *Quas enim copias his si peditari æquius est, eas transferunt ad alienos.* Cic.

Rule 6. A Pronoun Primitive comes elegantly between a Pronoun Possessive, and the Substantive to which it agrees with: as, *Familiaritas mihi tua non injuce dâ est.* *Pu tibi judicio est utendum.* Cic. *Argui domi te tua interficere voluisse.* Cic. *Gravi teste per vatus sum amoris summi erga te mei.* Cic. *Suum se gotium agere dicunt.* Cic.

Rule 7. The Pronoun *ipse* being to be set after a Pronoun Primitive in an Oblique Case, may elegantly come either before, or after it, in the Nominative Case: as, *Qui ipse sibi sapiens prodesse nequit, nequam sapit.* Cic. *Odi sapientem qui sibi ipse sapi non est.* Cic. *Hæc scripsi; non ut de me ipse diceret ut—*Cic. *Non egeo medicina, me ipse confici.* Cic. *Tibi unum timendum sit, ne ipse tibi des videare.* Cic. *Qui me violare volent, se ipse jubunt.* Cic. *Æquitas, enim lucet ipsa per se.* Cic. *me ipse de te cogitabam.* Cic. Att. 5. 10. *Animum ipse diffidens.* Cic. Fid. 1. 18:

Rule 8. Prepositions mostly come before their Word: as, *Illæ præsidia, quæ pro templis omnibinitis.* Cic. *Quâ in vitâ tantum abest ut voluissentur, etiam curas, sollicitudines, vigilias runt.* Cic. *Ego ipsi quodd de sua sententiâ deprecitendum puto.* Cic. *Accepi à te literas, videris verari ut epistolas illas acceperim.* Cic.

Except. Yet some Prepositions are not unelput after their Case, not only in Poets, but C
as, *Senatus, quos ad suleret, referendum censi*

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 81

Neminem posse dare alteri matrimonium, nisi *quem penes sit patrimonium*. Quintil. Cordi mihi fuit priusquam ad te irem, quærerere explorareque, quonam modo veteres nostri particulâ ista, *quâ de agitur*, usi sunt. A. Gell. *Quos adversum* multi ex *Bi byniâ* volentes occurrere falsum filium arguituri—Sal. *Quæsi quos inter* societas aut est, aut fuit, aut futura est, eorum est habendus ad summum naturæ bonum optimus beatissimusque comitatus. Cic. Consequeris tamen, ut eos ipsos, *quos contra* statuas æquos placatosque dimittas. Cic. *Quos contra* disputant. Cic. Perturbari animos necesse esse dicunt, sed adhibent modum, *quem ultra* progredi non oporteat. Cic. Quem locum *Ægyptum versus* finem imperii habuere *Carthaginenses*. Sal. Postulavit ut aliquem populus daret, *quatum* communicaret. Cic. *Qua. Suffidium, quocum* mihi omnes necessitudines sunt, diligentius commendo. Cic.

Note 1. Cum is always set after *me, te, se, nobis, and vobis*; and *tenuis* after his casual Word.

Note 2. And between the Preposition and his Case many other Words be elegantly set, especially the Genitive Case govern'd of that Substantive, which the Preposition comes before: as, *Per ego te Deos oro*, ut ne illis animum inducas credere. Ter. *Ex animi sententia*. Ter. *Pro rerum magnitudine*. Cic.

Rule 9. Betwixt the Particle and that Person of the Verb *Sum*, whereof the Preterfect Tense of a Verb Passive or Deponent is made up, there may some Word be elegantly plac'd: as *Diu sum equidem rebusatus*. *Decretum à Senatu est*. *Fructum est amplissimum consecutus*. Cic. *Hujus gloriæ, quam es paulò ante adeptus*, socium habes neminem. Cic.

Rule 10. The Vocative Case; the Verbs *inquit* and *ait*, and the Particles *enim*, *autem*, and *verò* have usually something plac'd in the Beginning of a Sentence before them: as, *Quancquam te, Marce fili, animum jam audientem Cratippum, idque Athenis, oportet*—Cic. *Ennio delector*, *ait*, —Cic. *Quam, inquit, vellem nescire literas*. Suet. Ner. c. 10. *Nec enim is es quem forma ista declarat*. Cic. *Inanimatum est enim omne, quod impulsu agito externo*. Cic. Erat

82 The ART of Teaching improv'

Erat autem difficile rem tantam inchoatam re. Cic. In quo autem desiderare te significat Ille vero virtutes virum bonum videntur potest. Cic.

Rule 11. Words of near and contrary Signification are elegantly plac'd together in a Sentence mihi *invisæ visæ* sunt. Eveniunt *digna di* *Doctus indoctos* quid præstat? quod *cæco via* *Maximis minima* conferam. Cic. Casta ad v. *trono parendo Imperat.* Publ. Per dexteram oro, quam regi Deiotaro, *hospes hospiti* porrex. Fit in *Dominatu servitus*, in *servitute dominus*. Quoad ejus præstabat *judicio dissimilitudini* Cic. Amor jubet meo *obedientem me esse* ferum. Plaut.

Rule 12. In a Contexture of Things relate other, what is more worthy, or before the Nature, is elegantly plac'd foremost in Orde before Patient, as, Non ego eum cum sum comparo—Cic. Roga ipsum quemadmodum Arimini acceperim. Cic. Mors in claris *viris* dux in cælum solet esse. Cic. *Dies noctes* queor. Cic. Tu, si *dies noctesque* memineris. (11. 3.)

Rule 13. In Extenuating the more weighty ought to go before the less or lighter: as, Nibi fuit, nulla *vox*, nulla *verberatio*, imò ne *cujdem*. But in Aggravating, the more weighty ought to follow the less or lighter: as, Civerum *vincere*, *verberare*, in *crucem tollere*.

Rule 14. In the placing of Words, avoid setting of them, as may beget Obscurity, Ambiguity, or ill Sound.

(1.) Obscurity, as in that Sentence: Fuit in *ista quondam republicâ*, for Fuit *ista quondam in istâ virtus*. Cic.

(2.) Ambiguity: as in those, *Da temetmetum*; which, because they may be mistake for other, therefore it is better to say *Temetmetum* *da*. Sa rather say *Atris summa* *th*.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 83

ken for *Summa tria*, or *Sumatria*, an Isle. Rather say *Sciuvine ego*, than *egone sciui*, because this last may be mistaken for *ego nesciui*.

(3) Ill Sound either ———

1. By the meeting together of many, e'ther Vowels : as, *Postea eo itum est* ; for which rather say *eo post itum est* : or harsh Consonants ; as, *Ingens strepitus* ; for which rather say, *strepitus ingens*. So, *Si puer esset ingenio eo esset* ; for which rather say *eo si puer esset ingenio, quo esse dicitur, &c.*

2. By the coming together of many either Monosyllables ; as, *Collocutus sum cum illo* ; for which rather say, *Collocutus cum illo sum*. Or Words of many Syllables of like Sound ; as, *Harum scribendarum literarum occasio hac est* ; for which rather say, *Harum scribendi literarum hac occasio est*. So, with Cicero, *Eorum insignia decorum*, than *eorum decorum*, or *decorum eorum insignia*

A prudent Intermixture of Words long and short, of like and of different Sound, beginning and ending interchangeably with Vowels and Consonants, is the only Remedy of these Faults.

The greatest Care for the well running of Words is to be had in the Beginning and End, especially in the four or five last Syllables.

Those Sentences are thought to be closed sweetly, that end in Words of like Syllables with the'se ; *videatur ; cariores ; parabat ; tuum ; capisse ; tribueretur ; miserim ; conservassem*, or any Tense of *Sum*, after a Particle of the Preter Tense or Future in *du* ; as,

Videantur] *Ut hac à virtute donata, cetera à virtute commodata esse videantur*, Cic.

Cariorem] *Neque ulla unquam atas de tuis laudibus conticescet*. Cic.—*Ut eos sape, quos nunquam videmus, diligamus*.

Parabat] *Et si esset aliquis, ejus certe non esset qui in eadem causa & fortuna fuisset*. Cic.

Tuum] ——— *Qua qui apud te, Caesar, utetur, suam citius abiciet humanitatem, quam exorquetur tuam*
Et quidquid est prosperè gestum, id pene omne ducit suum Cic.

84 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

Cæpissæ] *Semperque immortalitatis amore flagrans.* Cic.

Triūbūerētīr]—*Multaque uterque dux faceret a tus, quæ idem togatus fieri prohibuisset.* Cic.

Misērīm] *Hæc qui faciat, non ego eum cum sum viris comparo, sed simillimum Deo judico.* Cic. *Ut quantum operibus tuis diuturnitas detrahatur, tantum a laudibus.* Cic.

Cōsērvāf.ēm]—*Si quenkumque alium provincia percisset.* Cic. *Te vero quibus laudibus efferemus? quibus studiis prosequemur? qua benevolentia complectemur?* Cic. *tus sum]*—*Ut nemo mirati debeat, humana conditio divina necessitate esse superata.* Cic. *Et hoc pace divina, nullam in his esse laudem ampliorem, quam quam hodierno die consecutus es.* Cic.

duc sum] *Cum omnibus civibus, tum maxime a qui a te conservati sumus, providenda est.* Cic.

To which may be added Sentences ending in the like Words or Feet

Rēmīsīfī] *Ipsam victoriam vicisse videris, cum ea sa, quæ illa erat adepta, victis remisisti.* Cic.

Irāciōr]—*Cum pacis auctores conservandos statim fuerit, ceteris fuerit iracundior.* Cic. *Nimis iracundiam esse victoriam.* Cic. *Volcoque, cum resp. immortalis debeat, eam in unius mortalis animo consistere.* Cic.

Rēlinquēmus] *Parumne igitur, inquires, gloriam nāam relinquemus?* Cic.

Cōsiliū]—*Ut illud fati fuisse videatur, hoc consilii.*

Rēpudiārī]—*Non modo pacem, sed orationem et civium pacem efflagitantium repudiari.* Cic.

Vōluntārīū]—*Prudens & sciens, tanquam ad teritum ruerem voluntarium.* Cic.

Extimēscētēm]—*Tum etiam ipse victorie festatatem extimescentem.* Cic.

Diligētiām]—*Simul enim augebimus & diligemus.* Cic.

—*Quam ipsa eternitas semper intuebitur.* Cic.

Dissidēbāmus] *Non enim consiliis solum & studiis, armis etiam & dissidebamus.* Cic.

But in these Things Liberty is very great, Things being to be measur'd by the Ear, in the Ju

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 85

: of which, if a Sentence sound well, it matters much what Syllables it consists of.

Thirdly, Of Clauses in a Period.

Words and Phrases in a simple Sentence, so the several Clauses of a compounded Sentence, may be used with more or less Elegancy; touching which only Rule is, that the more frequent the Transposition is, the more elegant is the Sentence, so no Disorder or Obscurity follow thereon: as for Example,

Nihil allatum est, ne rumoris quidem.

Nihil, ne rumoris quidem, allatum est.

Si à nobis deficiis, molestè fero.

Molestè fero, si à nobis deficiis.

Molestè, si à nobis deficiis, fero.

Rogo, ut ad me venias.

Ut ad me venias, rogo.

Ad me ut venias, rogo.

Ad me, rogo, ut venias.

Gratum est mihi, quod ad me scribis.

Quod ad me scribis, gratum mihi est.

Mihi, quod ad me scribis, gratum est.

The main Thing here to be avoided is the *Hyper-*
n, or confused Intermixture of Words belonging
one Clause with the Words that belong to another,
which either alters the Sense, or renders the Sentence
seemingly difficult: as if one should say,

Quam cum isto sermonem audiui, habuisti; for
Quem cum isto habuisti sermonem, audiui.

Is amicitior mihi vivit, atque nullus est; for
Amicitior mihi nullus vivit, atque is est; or
Nullus mihi amicitior atque is est, vivit.

Sunt oculis clari, qui cernis sydera tanquam; for
Cernis oculis, qui clari sunt tanquam sydera.

Pene macros arsit, dum turdos versat in igne; for
Pene arsit dum macros in igne turdos versat.

And these few Rules of Observations may suffice
be instill'd into a Learner, 'till Time and Reading

88 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

standing of the Phrases, and so may prove a successful Key for the opening of many Difficulties in best of Latin Authors, *Cicero* especially: The other sides the many elegant Idioms or *Proprieties* of English and Latin that it comprehends, gives a good Jet into the Knowledge of the *Ornate Grammatical Construction*, for the most, if not all, of whose Rule it furnishes the Reader with very proper and pertinent Examples.

A Collection of PHRASES out of *Heri Anglo-Latinus*.

I Will make thee do it, [i. e. constrain]	C Ogam te hęc face
Make [i. e. turn] this into Latin	Verte hoc Latine
He made [i. e. feigned] as though he wept	Simulavit quasi flere
I will make them Friends, [i. e. reconcile]	Redigam eos in gratia
I would be loth to make thee be beaten [i. e. give Cause]	Non lubens committe ut vapules
He makes a Mouth, [i. e. writhes]	Os intorquet
I will make good [i. e. fill up, or supply]	Supplebo
He made much of me	Comiter me tractavit
What did you make of this Year's Crop?	Quanti vendidisti anni proventum?
Make a Leg	Flecte poplitem
Make the Bed	Sterne lectum
To make war	Belum gerere
Make haste	Festina, propera
To make a verse	Carmen componere
He made water	Urinam reddidit
To make a law	Legem ferre
Make ready supper	Para, adorna coenam

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 89

*Make a fire
You shall never make me be-
lieve this tale
You mak a fool of me,*

*He made him a King
He makes a stir about no-
thing
I will make an end*

*He being weary lay down ;
he laid him down when he
was weary*

*He cracks of his exploits,
wealth*

*He saith nothing for fear ;
he is in such a fear, that
he is not able to say a
word*

*I bought it for neither more
nor less ; I paid just so
much for it*

*It is I It was thou
It is not thou canst scare me*

I am found

He is pale

He is palish, or somewhat pale

What is he good for ?

Who will go with me ? I will

My poor help

A petty King

A pedling poet

A little fellow

A poor gain

Dear heart

A small field

Pretty well, somewhat better

Somewhat fearful

A poor Pittance

*Exstrue ignem
Nunquam mihi fidem fa-
cies hujus fabulæ
Ludis me, pro ludibrio ha-
bes me*

*Regem eum creavit
Tumultuatur in re nihili*

*Absolvam, finiam, finem
faciam*

Ille defessus decubuit

Crepat facinora ; divitias

Tacet me : u

*Nec pluris, nec minoris
emi*

*Ego sum. Tu er- s
Non tu is es qui me terre-
re potes*

Valeo

Pallet

Pa lidior est

Cui rei utilis est.

Quis mecum ibit ? ego ibo

Opella mea

Regulus

Poetaster

Homunculus

Lucellum

Corculum

Agellus

Meliusculæ

*Timidiusculus ; timidior ;
subtimidus*

Particula ; portiuncula

90 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

*A brick-wall
A summer apple
Household affairs
An eye-witness
In the top of the house
In the bottom of hell
The farthest part of the world*

*At the end of the town
About the lower end of the side*

*At break of day
The rest of the money
In the midst of the city
Born the fourth day of the moon in an unlucky hour
I am here that did it
This house of yours is like to fall*

This pride of hers will come down

Your own knavery will betray you

I saw him my self with my own eyes

They their own selves did it with their own hand

Thou thy own self

Here is the man his own self

He himself, or his own self

I inquired of a friend of mine and he told me

He hath not wherewithal to buy a halber to hang himself

A storm will sink a ship

The ship sinketh

Look hither

He looks like a flower

It will break before it will grow

*Murus costilis
Præcox pomum
Res domesticæ.
Oculatus testis
In summis ædibus
In imo Tartaro
Ultima terra*

*Ad extremum oppidum
Quasi in extrema pagina*

*Prima luce
Reliqua pecunia
In urbe media
Quarta Luna natus*

*Adsum qui feci
Hæc tua domus est rursus*

Ejus superbia distumescet

Tua ipsius nequitia te pro-
det

Ego me ipse vidi me is ip-
sius oculis

Illi ipsi fecerunt sua ipso-
rum manu

Tu ipse

Adest ipse homo

Ille ipse

Sciscitabat à quodam fa-
miliari meo, qui nunc-
ciavit mihi

Non habet quod ostendat ad suspensum

Procella submerget navem

Navis subsidit

Respice huc

Videtur sordidus

Prius frangitur quam flos
dicatur What

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 91

What hast thou been doing?

I have been writing

The money is in the coining

Speak out thy words

I care not for thee

I will tarry abroad out of doors

He is followed by many, overtaken by few

Winter was well nigh spent, and the spring drew on

Thou art doing, but makest no Riddance

He cannot forbear doing mischief; keep out of ill turns

He is broken, bankrupt

Good luck have the business, good speed it

It waxed night, ripe

I am to go away

He is gone a hunting, to hunt

Thou hast no cause to complain—of complaining

Very desirous to go (of going back)

The greatest Allurement to sin is hope of escaping

Take time to advise

He rose very early to study

I have my Brother to interpret yet

What hast thou appointed to do

I commend my son to you to be taught

I am come to interpret that I might

Quid fecisti?

Scripti

Argentum creditur

Eloquere verba

Nihil moror te

Morabor sub dio

Multi sequuntur eum, pauci assequuntur

Precipitaverat hyems, & appetebat ver

Moves, sed non promoves

A maleficio non temperabit

Decoxit

Vertat hæc res bene

Vesperascit, maturescit

Sum abire

Ivit venare

Nuham hanc causam querendi

Cupidissimè redeundi

Maxima peccandi illecebra, spes est impunitatis

Sume diem ad deliberandum

Surrexit admodum diluculo ad studendum; studendi gratia

Restat mihi frater adhuc exorandus

Quid mihi præscribis faciendum?

Commendo tibi filium docendum

Veni ut rogarem, ut liceret mihi

*I desire thee to be (or that
thou wouldest be) gone*

I know not what to do

*Send thy man before to en-
quire*

*Art thou a fit man to teach
me?*

*He gave me a book to read,
but not worth reading,
not worthy to be read*

*Here is a pen knife for you
to make a pen withal*

*He was not come back in
the morning, but now he
is come back*

*Thou art come sooner than I
looked*

*I was gone abroad before
thou wert up*

*I am undone, if he be gone
away*

I am run out of breath

The apple is ripe

*You are a fool to believe—
for believing him*

*You know what account I
make of him*

About (ready) to fall

He deserves to be praised

He should have been punished

*The better gamester at dice,
the worse man*

*They differ but in one thing
But for this one time*

*There is not a day but he
cometh to me*

*You can relish nothing but
roasted meat*

*What else, is it to dance, but
to play the fool*

Oro te, ut abeas

Nescio quid faciam

Præmitte famulum, qui
quærat

Tunc es idoneus, qui me
doceas?

Dedit mihi librum legen-
dum, (quem legerem) at
indignum qui legatur

Hem tibi sca pellum, quo
pennam exacuas

Mane non redierat, sed
nunc rediit

Venisti celerius opinione

Prodieram foras prius-
quam tu surrexeras

Si ille abiit, perii

Cucurri usque dum fatiscit
spiritus

Pomum maturuit

Stultus es, qui huic credas

Scis quanti eum faciam

Ruiturus

Laudandus est

Plectendus esset

Aleator, quanto doctior,
tanto nequior

De una solum re dissident
Hæc tantum vice

Nullus est dies quin (quo
non) ad me ventiter

Nihil tibi sapit, præter assa-

Quid aliud est saltare, nisi
ineptire

The Grounding of a young Scholar. 93.

*nothing but play
letters but to you*

*but what was well
id went from him
but weep*

*ne
r to door
word
d thou dost it not
come back
yest be gone
ove three miles off*

*you not? Rise
afraid
pains
ig'd engag'd to thee,
r dibt
lo much wi b him*

*after's b ck
d day light
cause
yest be gone for all*

*un-shot
ot be for thy profit*

*ng his worth. he is
sed with respect e-*

*g to the sudden. At
as th: Case stood*

*s.
nur side
of lato's sect.
King's counsellor
by footman.
ud behind.*

Nil nisi ludit
Nullas dedi literas, præ-
terquam ad te
Nil nisi consideratum pro-
dibat ex ejus ore
Non possum non flere;
quin fleam

Sigillatim
Ostia im
Verbatim
Cave ne feceris
Fac redeas
Licet abeas
Amplius tria millia pas-
suum abest.

Quin surgis?
Admodum timeo
Citrà pulverem
Sum in tuo ære

Tu multum [plurimum]
potes apud eum
Ad domini nutum
Ad clarum diem
Hâc de causâ
Licet abeas per me

Extra telum, teli iactum
Non erit ex re iustâ in-
rem tuam
Pro ejus dignitate minus
honorifice tractatur

E re natâ

Non abs te
A nobis stat
Est a Plâ'one
Regi est a consiliis
Erat tibi a pedibus
A fronte & a tergo

94. The Art of Teaching improv'd,

At supper time
About *ten* talents
Word for word

At my house
In his right mind
It is to be found in Virgil
In the days of yore, among
our Ancestors
In Jest; sport
For this present

Every hour
One with another
What employment is he fit for?
Here's a pen for thee to write
with
This is the man I told you of

Thou shouldst have told me this
before
Lay the burden upon me
I will go presently to the
man

He goes to bed supperless,
without his supper
Shew thyself a man
He will prove a scholar
He is held an excellent di-
vine

He is reported to be (both
the report of) a spend-
thrift

I had rather go on foot, than
on horse-back

He is sick of a quartan (fe-
ver)

To give him a clutck crown

To pour on cold water

Super [inter] cenam
Ad decem talenta
Ad verbum; verbum
verbo

Apud me, domi meae
Apud se, compos mentis
Habetur apud Virgilium
Apud majores

Per jocum; ludum
In praesentia; in praese-
in praesenti

In horas

Inter se

Quas ad res aptus est?

Hem tibi pennam
scribas

Hic est de quo locutus sum
tibi

Debuiisti praedicere

Impone mihi hoc onus
Illico adibo hominem

It cubitum incornatus

Praesta te virum

Evadei doctus

Theologiae peritissimus
betur

Audit nepos

Mallero ire pedes, quam
equos

Laborat quartana, scilicet
bre

Donare civica, scilicet
na

Frigidam suffundere,
aquam.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 95

*to hold the first parts, to be
the chief*

*Which way? that way
at my charge*

*There is a thing that I wou'd
tell thee*

*There are some that say so
There is a thing that trou-
ble me*

*There is no room for me to sit
You have cause to be glad
We are most desirous of those
things that are most hurt-
ful to us*

*I will not hinder you from
studying
Nothing hinder'd you from
writing*

*Business hinder'd me from
writing*

*What trade are you of?
Let your book be always
hanging*

*They were two days journey
off*

*What's the matter?
You see what a kind of man
he is*

*If any matter of money re-
main*

*I wou'd not a wenching at
that age, at those years*

A poor deal of wine

At this time of the day

What sickness is this

*So much money, so much cre-
dit*

This poor piece of a letter

*The way is much of the same
Angels*

Primas tenere, sc. partes

Qua? illuc, sc. via
De meo, sc. æ re, vel si impo-
tu

Est quod tibi indicarem

Sunt qui affirmant.
Est quod me male habe

Non est ubi sedeam
Est quod gaudeas
Quæ maxime nobis nocent
ea maxime appetimus

Per me non stabit quo mi-
nus studeas
Nihil obstitit quo minus
scriberes

Negotia me impediunt
quo minus scriberem
Quam artem facit
Semper tibi pendeat ha-
mus

Aberant bidui, sc. viam

Quid rei est?
Vides quid sit hominis

Si quid nummorum erit
reliquum

Ego istuc ætatis non a-
mori operam dabam.

Minimum vini

Hoc diei

Quid hoc morbi est?

Quantum pecuniæ, tan-
tum fidei.

Hoc literularum

Tantundem via est?

96 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

He hath just his Master's conditions Domini est simillimus

He is not able to pay

Non est solvendo, sub-
neus

*They carry Things fit to put
out the fire*

Ea portant, restingue
igni forent, sc. idone

*He endureth cold the best of
any man living*

Est omnium qui viv
algoris patientissimu

*I am the nearest to you of a-
ny Man*

Tibi me proprior nemo

Ask his advice about this

Consule illum hoc

I can eat beef heartily

Vescor bubula lubent
me, sc. carne

*I will take the same course
that thou dost*

Eodem tecum utar con-

*I imitate } thee
I envy }*

Æmu'or { te
tibi

No Man understands me

Non intelligor ulli

Cicero salutes you

Salvebis a Cicerone

*I shall beware of him that he
hurt me not*

Cavebo ab illo, ne n
noceat

He is in a gross error

Errorum erravit spissu

You will be heartily glad

Solidum gaudebis gau-
um

What pranks would he play?

Quos ludos luderet?

*This is a secret to us, we are
ignorant of it*

Hoc nos latet

*He came to the relief of the
townsmen*

Oppidanis suppetias
nit

It casts an ugly smell

Tetrum odorem spirat

What hast thou to supper?

Quid cœnasti?

They know not the way

Semitam non sapiunt

It smells of saffron

Olet crocum

I am sorry for you

Doleo tuam vicem

I deny it

Eo inficias

The day will fail me

Deficiet me dies

You are sure to be punished

Pœna vos manet

To die

Morti occumbere

Hands off, forbear

Abstine manum

I wrestle with, out of, troubles

Eluctor difficultates

I mind only this, this is all

Studeo hoc unum, in

I mind

unum

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 97

quicken his speed flight
 he is seven years old
 is for { subjects to obey
 Kings to command
 came into my mind, head
 he studies physick
 here is room for you
 he minds philosophy
 he ruled by me
 what troubles you?
 yield to thee
 come into the house
 was by when he preached
 present at the sermon
 had a mind, d-fire
 am not in fault
 he is convicted of theft
 to condemn to death
 He sued him in an action of
 trespass
 to accuse of treason
 He is accused of bribery
 He accuseth him of a crime
 He set fire on the house, the
 House on fire
 I bought this for you
 Set pen to paper
 He deceived me, cozened me,
 put a trick upon me
 He committed this to my
 trust
 He forbade me his house; dis-
 charged me of his house
 I'll have nothing to do with
 your friendship; Enter-
 tainment; gift, &c.
 I will take a course, provide
 for thee

Ce erare fugam
 Ess annorum septem
 Es | Subditi parere sc. offi-
 Regis imperare | cium.
 Venit mihi in mentem
 Studet medicinæ
 Locus vacat tibi
 Vacat philosophiæ
 Ausculta mihi
 Quid tibi dolet
 Accedo tibi
 Succede ædibus
 Interfui concioni
 Incessit mihi cupiditas
 Vaco culpâ
 Teneatur furri
 Damnare capitis
 Egredijuriarum cum illo
 Læsæ majestatis arceffere,
 insimulare
 Postulatur de repetundis,
 sc. pecuniis
 Arguit { eum crimine
 Arceffit {
 Injecit ignem ædibus
 Hoc mercatus sum tibi
 Imprime pennam chartæ
 Imposuit mihi
 Credidit hoc meæ fidei
 Interdixit; prohibuit mi-
 hi domum
 Renuccio amicitiae; hos-
 pitio; muneri, &c.
 Prospiciam; consulam;
 cavebo tibi

98 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

I promise thee this.

Answer me this.

He will not let me have my Book.

I will put thee by all thy Shifts.

He gave me a Box on the Ear. Forgive me this Fault.

Will you command me any Service.

I suppose they have no Money.

I'll look to that.

Put him in mind of his Duty.

We are warned of many Things.

He kept these Things from his Father

I instruct this of you.

They are asked their Opinion.

Let me prevail with you.

He has his Gown on.

Skilful in Greek

Well skill'd in Martial Discipline.

He stripp'd him of his Goods, of all.

Let him lose, be made to go without his Supper.

I have wip'd the old Man of his Money.

He is of, has a low'ring Look When he had spoken these Words.

He is gone a hunting.

Hoc tibi recipio

Hoc mihi responde

Prohibet mihi librum

Præcludem tibi omnia interfugia

Impegit mihi colaphus

Condona mihi hoc delictum

Ecquid mihi imperabis

Suspikor nihil argenti illis

Hoc mihi curæ erit

Admone illum officiû

Multa admonemur

Hæc patrem celavisti

Te hoc obsecro

Rogantur sententiam

Sine te exorem

Induitur togam

Literas Græcas cruditus

Edoctus belli artes

Exiit cum bonis

Multetur cœna

Emunxi argento senem

Fonte est caperata

His verbis dictis

Abiit venaturus

the Grounding of a young Scholar. 99

*ing h'm do as he lists,
him grow every Day
than other.*

ie of writing.

*f. leave your prating
a sunning.
write Letters.*

write out this Book.

ng Letters.

o Leisure to write a

t at Leisure.

yeet for all me.

ay Purp. se.

ill become of me.

r by Jove.

l of that Age.

hings of like sort.

Day of January.

ed Day of January.

y

ty.

diness.

and Land

no Account with us.

od Courage.

of great Age.

f his Fee.

ir'd.

t Condition.

sake.

ood Age.

sick of a Disease; Fe-

; Want.

e you, greet you well.

Usque adeo permittis eum
quidvis pro libitu face-
re, ut quotidie fiat so-
ipso deterior.

Occupatus est scribendo.

Desisse garriendo.

Posui ad insolandum.

Scribendæ sunt mihi lite-
ræ.

Exscribendus est mihi hic
liber.

In scribendo literas, (in
scribendis literis.

Non est mihi otiosa scri-
bendæ epistolæ, (scri-
bendi epistolam.

Non vacat mihi.

Licet tibi per me.

Alienum institutis meis.

Quid mihi [de me] fiet?

Jovem jurare (per.

Puer id ætatis (ad.

Id genus multa (secundum.

Pridie calendas Februarii
(ante.

Tertio nonas Janu. (ante.

In proximo (loco.

In tuto (loco.

In promptu.

Terra marique.

Nullus est numero apud nos.

Bono sis animo.

Homo provecta ætate.

Claudus pedibus.

Crine ruber.

Ea lege (sub.

Tua causa (pro.

Grandis natu.

Laborat morbo; febris;

penuria.

Impertio te salute.

In.

100. *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

*In confidence of your course
lie.*

*He is not ab'le to speak for
grief.*

Of the same mould, temper.

To be angry for nothing.

*She has had a child by Pam-
philus.*

*You shall not buy it but at a
dear rate.*

*You ask too much for your
wares.*

You offer a penny for it.

To set at naught.

*How dost thou prize this
house?*

Not under ten pounds.

It is not worth so much.

*One eye witness is worth a
thousand ear witnesses.*

I care not a straw for thee.

I take it in good part.

I weigh it not thus much.

It weighed three drachms.

*Go not a nail's breadth from
the truth.*

Two days journey off.

Less by the half.

A city unguarded.

To stand to the bargain.

To rely upon virtue

Well born.

Come of a great house.

*I am a Iouth man, but my
ancestors were of York-
shire.*

He went out at three a clock

*With'in the'se two days we shall
know.*

Fretus tuâ humanitate.

Præ mœrore fari nequit,

De eadem fidelia.

De nihilo irasci.

Peperit è Pamphilo.

*Non parabis nisi immenso
pretio*

Licetis nimio merces.

Licitaris denario.

Pro nihilo putare, ducere.

Quanti indicas has ædes?

*Non minoris quam decem
minis.*

Non est tanti.

*pluris oculatus testis unus,
quam mille auriti.*

Non pili te facio.

Boni consulo.

Hujus non pendo.

Pendet tres drachmas.

*Ne transversum unguem
discedas a recto.*

Abest bidui iter.

Dimidio minor.

Urbs præsidio nuda.

Stare pactis.

Virtute niti.

Honesto loco natus.

*Genere clarissimo [splen-
dida famili.] or us.*

*Sum Pudensis, ac oriundus
ex agro Eboracensi.*

Prodiit tertia hora.

*Biduo; intra biduum sci-
emus.*

The Grounding of a young Scholar.

me.
till broad day.
three years full.

3; month.
years past
me of the night.
it night.
till fair day.
thence
ice of some years.
day.
ago, since.

1, since then
selvemanth since I
author, setter on.

lin; Carthage;
From about Rome,
parts about Rome.
as were done before
I'erda.

id from before Ma-

Pompey.
se, be up, get out
sooner than I was

'f a mile.

on touching of us?
ter an inheri ance
sire, mind.
not which way to

ve our my enter.

Per quietem
Stertis ad multum diem.
Per totum triennium.
De nocte.
In annum; mensem.
Multis retro annis.
Hoc noctis.
Ad multam noctem.
Ad clarum diem dormis.
Ad Octavum hinc diem.
Aliquot per annos.
Diem ex die.

Ante sex annos; sex ab
hinc annis.

Ex quo, ex illo.
Annus est ex quo eum vi-
de; quod eum non vidi.
Me authore.

In Hibernia.
Dublini; Carthagine; Ve-
netiis

Venit à Roma.

Hæc ad Ilerdam geruntur.

Discessit a Mutina.

Proximè Pompeium sedeo.
Surgam maturius solito.

Amplius quingentis passi-
bus,

Quid tibi nos est tactio?

Inhiare hæreditatem.

Incessit me cupido.

Nescio quam viam insti-
tam

Desistam in æp'o.

122 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

<i>I forbear to speak of many Things</i>	Pluribus supersedeo.
<i>Born to Glory.</i>	Natus gloriæ; ad gloriam.
<i>He spake not a Word of thee.</i>	De te nihil meminit
<i>He came to that height of Pride.</i>	Eo insolentiæ processit.
<i>As far as it is possible to be done.</i>	Quoad ejus fieri potest.

A Collection of Phrases out of Dr. Goodwin's Roman Antiquities. L. 1.

SECT. 1. CH. 1.

T O build a new Town.	U Rbem novam condere
<i>To set out where the Walls of a Town should be.</i>	Urbem } designare aratro, Mœnia } sulco.
<i>To raze or demolish a Town, or City.</i>	Imprimere muris hostile aratrum.
Chap. 2. <i>We fly to thee as to our only Refuge.</i>	Ad te tanquam ad asylum, aram confugimus.
C. 10 <i>To keep the Assizes.</i>	Forum agere.
<i>To appoint where the Assizes shall be kept</i>	Forum indicere.
C. 15. <i>Huge Books, or Books of Ivory.</i>	Libri Elephantini.
C. 17. <i>An unconstant, unsettled mind.</i>	Ingenium volaticum, defultorium.
<i>Lead, spare, vaulting Horses</i>	Equi defultorii.
<i>He is to be barred from giving his Voice</i>	De ponte dejiciendus est.
C. 18 <i>From the Start to the Staff; Beginning to the Ending.</i>	A carceribus ad metam; ab ovo ad mala.
C. 19. <i>An ignoble Person; one of the Hinds.</i>	Inter cuneos residet.
<i>To go into the Field; enter the Lists.</i>	In arenam descendere.

the Grounding of a young Scholar. 103

to appoint where a
should be built
for God and our

Effari templum, sistere
fanum
Pro aris & focis certare

5. 1. Sect 2.

Unfeignedly, like a
n; from the heart
sens of Rome, made
y co-optation.

More Romano; i. e. ex a-
nimo
Civitate donati

rsed to Hell
of Rome
of the lower house;
rs of the house of
ms

Diis inferis devoti
Patres conscripti
Senatores minorum gen-
tium

troop horse, a horse
service of the war
account; inferior;
ersons

Equus publicus; militaris
Ignota capita; sine nomi-
ne turba. Post

upstart citizen
man; a knight of
st head

Novus & repitius civis.
Sal.

ee born citizens
le citizens

Novus homo
Cives originarii; ingenui
Liberti; libertini; civi-
tate donati

one free; to set at
y

E manu aliquem emitte-
re; ad pileum vocare,
vindictâ liberare

mind to give him
cedom

Hunc liberum esse volo.

{ free } Man
{ noble }

Habet tria nomina

ies debt

Nomina liberare

ito debt

Nomina facere

payment

Nomina exigere

L I B. II.

8. 1 Chap. 1.

and cudgelling

the greater Nations

Argumentum bacilli-
num

Dii majorum gentium;
nobiles; consentes

Gods

104 The-A R T of Teaching improv'd,

Gods of the lesser nations.

Country gods, tutelar gods.

Indifferent, neuter, common gods.

The good angel.

The evil angel.

The womens guardian angels.

It was done against the pleasure of God.

No man without his misfortune.

He makes much of himself; he pampers his kite, carcass.

A very pinch belly, a thief to his own belly, carcass.

The grace-cup

In a little cottage.

A man that hath no certain abiding place, settled dwelling.

A very eat all; one that plays the glutton [greedy gut] leaves not so much as manners in the dish.

Se&. 2.

Ch 2. It is seed time.

He makes a feast without wine.

Ch. 6. With good luck, luckily.

With ill luck

To begin a thing.

It thundered luckily, we shall have good success, speedwell.

Protectors of the Commons.

Dii minorum Gentiu

Dii indigetes; Sem

Dii patrii, Dii tutelari

Dii communes.

Bonus Genius.

Malus Genius.

Junones.

Diis iratis factum. Pla

Quisque suos patimur nes.

Genio indulget.

Genium defraudat.

Poculum boni genii.

Parvo sublare. Hor.

Homo incerti laris.

Lari sacrificat.

Credenda Ceres arvis.

Cereri sacrificat.

*Bonis avibus; auspice
ave sinistra; cornic
nistri.*

Malis avibus.

Auspicari rem.

Intonuit loevum.

Tribuni plebis.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 105

C. 9. He gave over being Priest; left his Priest-hood	Sacerdotio abibat
C. 10. The battle was doubtful; fought with various success; now one side had the better, now the other by one's own strength Dainty cheer; &c	Vario Marte pugnatum est Proprio Marte Saliarès dapes Arietem emisit
C. 11. He hath sent him a challenge; challenged him into the field A denunciation of war	Clarigatio Sybillæ folium est
C. 12. It is undoubtedly true; true as Gospel An hard task	Laboriosius est quam Si- byllæ folia colligere Clodius accusat Mæchos
C. 13. One thief accuseth another; the pot calls the pan burnt arse	Circulator Cybeleius
C. 14. A rude fellow; a lewd person, a very rascal. Cybele's juggler	Cœna pontificia; adjicia- lis, adictalis, aditualis.
C. 15. A costly supper; a sumptuous feast; a feast for an abbot; a commencement supper; an installation-supper; exceedings	Accedere ad rem illotis manibus, pedibus.
C. 19. To enterprize a thing without due reverence, or preparation Must I be whipt for your faults? ——— suffer for your Rogueries? Attend, mind, what you are about To tak a light taste of a thing The first offerings He grows in grace	Meum tergum stultitiæ rue subdes succedane- um? Hoc age Libare Prima libamina Mactus est virtute

106 The ART of Teaching improv'd

To say the sacrifice

Shall I fall to? must I to my
work?

To satisfy by sacrifice; or,
to pay the sacrifice

He cannot stay 'till grace be
said

C. 20. Witnesses to a con-
tract

To marry a wife

The marriage bed

Where you are lord I am
lady; where you are jack
I am gill

A wedding, and no wedding
I will have nothing to do;
no dealing with you

Take your things and be
gone; packing

Cæsar hath divorced Pom-
peia

He hath cast off all goodness
To close the eyes

C. 21 It is past help; care;
all's in vain; to no pur-
pose; there is no hope; he
is given up for gone

You have your leave to be
gone; you may be pack-
ing; depart

To make a funeral sermon;
oration for one

It is time now, now's the
time

A burial and no burial

An old carle; a down man;
one that hath one foot al-
ready in the grave

Seft. 3.

C. 1. The fourth day of
April

Hostire victimam;
re ferire hostia
Agon'?

Litare

Sacra haud immo-
vorat

Signatores

Dacere uxorem

Genialis lectus

Ubi tu Cajus,

Caja, i. e. ut ti-
nus; ita ego do-

Nuptiæ innuptæ.

Conditione tua ne

Res tuas tibi habe

Cæsar Pompeiæ
remisit

Viruti nimium r

Comprimere oculo

Conclamatum est

Illicet

Defunctum pro ro-
dare

Jam tempus est

Sepultura insepul-

Silicernium

Pridie nonas Apr

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 107

Holy day cloaths

C. 2. *It is a secret ; no body knows the reason of it*

C. 5. *Worse scar'd than hurt ; better than we look'd for ; not so ill as we fear'd ; all will be well, the old fasher dances*

C. 6. *Having a Mind to make bets, to lay wagers*
He hath lost both his labour and cost

To fight at whirl-bats

C. 7. *He was humm'd extraordinarily, highly applauded for his verses ; — Sermon ; cry'd up mightily*

C. 9. *To make a solemn vow unto God*

To make a vow to build a Church ; institute a game

To bind one's self, to make good his vow

Liable to make good his vow
Bound to performance of his vow

To have one's desire accomplished

C. 10. *Hirelings, persons hired to play prizes*

A flourish before the fight
It is one thing to flourish, another to fight

Weapons for shew, for fight

To fight at sharps, with naked weapons

To change one's posture ; purpose ; go back from his word

Purpura Megalensis

Est inter arcana Cereris

Salva res est, saltat senex

Sponsionibus concitatus

Operam & oleum perdidit,
opera & impensa periit
Bellare cestu

Fregit subsellia versu ; oratione, clamatum re.
etc, bene, pulchre ;
grande sophos

Vota nuncupare ; facere

Vovere templum ; ludos

Signare votum

Voti reus

Damnatus voti ; voto

Damnati voti, voto

Auctorati

Præ'udium

Aliud est ventilare ; aliud pugnare

Lusoria ; exercitatoria tela ; Decretoria ; pugnatória arma

Dimicare ad certum ; versis armis pugnare

Cedere ; demigrare de gradu

F

He

108. The ART of Teaching improv'd,

He is put into a Maze; driven
to change his Mind,
put to a Puzzle
A ribanded Garland; a Con-
quest after a Combat.
He has won many a Prize.

Discharg'd from his Pains
He hath a mind to put a Trick
upon you.

To play at Blind-Mans-Buf-
fet; to wink and strike.
He gives him a Challenge;
dares him to fight

C. 11. The End of a Man's
Life.

A Man fit for all Parts;
good at any Thing.

Recreatory Diversions.

A lofty Stile.

C. 13. He hath broken the
League of Hospitality.

Size Ace, a Goose to a Chick-
en; a Dwarf to a Gyant;
a very unequal Compari-
son

A winning Cast; a lucky
Cast.

A losing Cast; Dog-Chance;
an unlucky Throw.

I will put all to the Hazard;
win the Horse or lose the
Saddle; win all or lose all.

To play at Ball.

To whip a Top.

To play at even or odd.

To leave Boys-Play; to be
past a Child.

Cross or Pile.

De me utis statu deji-
deturbatur.

Palma lemniscata.

Plurimarum palm
homo.

Rude donatus.

Fragulam in te in
adornat. Plaut.

Andabatarum more
nare.

Minimo provocat.

Vitæ humanæ Cat
phe.

Omnium scenarum h

Diludia.

Sophocleus cothurnu

Tesserum hospitii c
git.

Κόσμος τοῦ Χίου. Co
Chium.

Jactus pronus; pl
senio; Venus; C

Jactus supinus; in
canis; canicula; c

Aut ter sex, aut t
seræ.

Datatum ludere.

Buxum torquere flag

Ludere par impar;
numerus dicere, an

Nuces relinquere.

Vel capita, vel navi

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 109

C. 14. He did invite me very earnestly; was very earnest for me to come.

Unbidden Guests.

He needed but small Invitation.

From the Beginning to the Ending.

The 1. at the Feast.

The 2. the Feast.

The 3. of Dish; the most, ntial Dish.

A { light supper

A { Dole in Meat or Money.

A well furnish'd Table; great Varieties; a plentiful Supper; great Cheer.

A thin Supper; slender Table, small Cheer; scanty Provisions.

Penulam mihi icidit.

Muscæ; umbræ.

Illius ego vix tetigi penulam, tamen remansit.

Ab ovo ad mala.

Proœmium cœnæ.

Epilogus cœnæ.

Caput cœnæ; fundus & fundamentum cœnæ.

Sportula.

Cœna recta.

Cœna ambulatoria; dubia

L I. B. III.

Chap. 1. Sect. 1.

A T latter Lammas; at Nevermas.

The fifth of January.

The fourth of January.

The thirteenth Day of January.

The twelfth Day of January.

The first Day of January.

The last Day of December.

Fortunate Days.

Unfortunate Days.

Mark'd for a black Sheep

To plant in an unlucky Hour.

Towards Midnight.

A D Calendas Græcas.

Nonæ Januariæ, Januarii.

Pridie nonarum, or nonas Jan

Idus Januarii.

Pridie Iduum [vel Idus] Januarii.

Kalendæ Januariæ.

Pridie Kalend. Jan.

Dies albi.

Dies atrî; postriduani ægyptiaci; nefasti.

Nigro carbone notatus.

Nefasto quid ponere die.

Ad mediam noctem.

110 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

A little after Midnight.

Holy Days.

Working Days.

Half Holy Days.

A Law Day.

Whole Court or Leet } *Days.*

Half Court

N n Leet

A common Barreter, wrangling Fellow.

C. 2. An old Man.

Old Men above sixty Years of Age have a Writ of Ease given them.

A Will made in an Assembly of Pontifices.

By Word of Mouth.

Be it as you desire.

I am for the old Way; love no changing; like no Innovations.

He had not seven Voices for him.

He had not a Man against him; every Body stood for him.

Possession of Goods, according to the Will of the Testator

Possession of Goods against the Will of the Testator.

A chief Heir; Heir to the main Inheritance.

The next Heir to succeed after the Death of the first.

A Legatee, one that hath a Legacy given him

Confused Notes, foul Papers Books of Account; Count-Books.

Statute-Books; or Books of Record.

De media nocte.

Dies festi; feriat; feri.

Dies profesti.

Dies intercisi.

Dies comitialis.

Dies } *fasti*
 } *ex parte fasti.*
 } *nefasti.*

Homo comitialis.

Depontanus.

Sexagenarii de ponte decendi.

Testamentum calatis comitiis.

Vivà voce.

Uti rogas.

Antiquum volo; antiquum

Suffragiorum puncta n tulit septem.

Omne tulit punctum.

Secundum tabulas bonorum possessio.

Contra tabulas bonorum possessio.

Hæres primæ ceræ; primo gradu institutus ex toto asse.

Hæres secundus.

Hæres est in imâ cerâ; gatarius.

Adversaria

Tabulæ accepti & expen

Tabulæ publicæ.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. III

Letters of Protection, or Dis-
charge from paying of Debts
Bills of Sale

A Letter. A Letter-carrier

A leaden Plate to write upon

We opened the Letter; broke
up the Seal

To turn Cat in the Pan; say
and unsay, recant what he
hath said

He knew his own Hand and
Seal

To read over a Book

The Roller, or Staff on which
the Book was rolled

To bring to an End

To shake the Lots together;
to make even Lots

The good Fortune to have the
Voices of the Prerogative
Tribe

To publish a Law to be made
before the making of it

To move that a Law be made

To record a Law

To proclaim or publish a Law,
after it be made

To cancel a Law

The Falling Sickneſs

To forbid the Proceedings

C. 4. Authors of best Ac-
count; Classſical Authors

Men of the first Rank; Clas-
ſick Men

Under Value

Men reckoned by the Poll;
that paid little or nothing
toward Subſidies

A Suiter for an Office

Men of small Means

Men good for nothing but to
get Children

Tabulæ novæ

Tablæ auctionariæ

Tabellæ; Tabellarius

Charta plumbea

Linum incidimus

Stylum invertere

Cognovit manum & ſig-
num ſuum

Evolvere librum

Umbilicus

Ad umbilicum ducere

Æquare fortes

Omen prærogativum

Promulgare legem

Rogare legem

Ferre legem

Figere legem; tabulam

Refigere legem

Morbus comitialis

Obnunciare; intercedere

Classici scriptores

Classici

Infra classem

Capite cenſi

Candidatus

Tenuis cenſus homi-nes

Proletarii, ſc. homines

112 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

To sound the { Alarm.
Retreat.

C 6 To sue for an Office.

To enter into an Office.

To depart out of an Office

To have as many Voices as the
Law doth require.

To have most Voices, though
not so many as the Law re-
quireth

C. 7. He is ready ; in a Rea-
diness

A lewd Woman, loose Strum-
pet

To go to their Cassocks ; buc-
kle for War ; make ready
for Battle

Peace is to be preferred before
War, Times of Peace.

He is past a Stripling, grown
up to Years of Discretion

He is past a Child, grown to
Man's Estate

A Suiter for an Office ; Citi-
zen of better than ordinary
Repute

A young Student of Oratory

To change his Apparel, put on
mourning Weeds

A Murner ; one that hath
put himself into Mourning

An arraign'd Prisoner

His Majesty's principal Secre-
tary

Childhood

An embroidered Gown

C. 8. Near is my Shirt, but
nearer my Skin

He hath lost his Money ; Purse

To arm himself

to flower a Virgin

Classicum } canere
Receptui }

Ambire magistratum

Inire magistratum

Abire magistratu

Conficere legitima suffra-
gia

Explere suffragia.

Alte præcinctus est

Mulier togata

Ad saga ire ; ad certamen
se accingere.

Cedunt saga, arma togæ

Excessit ex ephebis

Virilem togam sumpsit

Candidatus

Eloquentie candidatus

Mutare vestem

Atratus

Sordidatus

Candidatus principis, Qua-
stor candidatus

Ætas prætextata

Toga picta ; palmata ; tri-
umphalis

Tunica pallio proprior est

Zonam perdidit

Arma induere

Zonam solvere

L

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 113

Lib. 3. Sect. 2.

Chap 2. To discharge one of his Office; Dignity	Fasces abrogare
To give Place; yield unto; strike Sail to	Fasces submittere alicui
C. 3 The Decree of the Se- nate	Senatus consultum. S. C
To propound a Matter to the Senate	Referre ad Senatum
I am fully perswaded of his Opinion; side with him; am of his Side	In illius sententiam iturus sum; manibus pedi- busq; discesseris sum
He was favourab'y heard in the Senate	Senatus ei dabatur
He came off well with the Se- nate; was acquitted by the Senate	Stetit in Senatu
The Senate neglected, condem- ned him	Jacuit in Senatu
To determine by Voices; by polling	Per singulorum sententias exquisitas decernere
To strain, or seize on a Man's Goods	Cedere Concidere Capere Auferre } pignora
C. 4. The Consul [Mayor] Elect	Ad consulatum designa- tus
He was appointed to be Fla- men Dialis the next Year	Flam. Dialis designatus est
Men that have been Consul's	Consulibus sequentibus Viri consulares
C. 5 The Authority of Ma- gistrates to inquire into and reform Manners	Virgula censoria
Censor-like to chide; or re- buke	Virgulà Censorià notare
To depose a Senator	Senatu movere
To degrade; put one down a Peg; put into a lower Tribe.	Tribu movere
A degrading of one.	Capitis diminutio
Five, ten, fifteen Years Space	Lustrum, duo, tria lustra
To purge, to muster an Army	Condere lustrum

114 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

C. 6. To grant out a Writ or <i>Action against a Man</i> To condemn to Death To pass Judgment on one To see and allow the Delivery ; <i>the Thing or Person where-</i> <i>on Judgment is passed</i> Most bounden Servants To sell a Man's Life ; to take Money to kill me	Dare actionem Cap'te damnare Dicere jus Rem, hominem addicere
C. 9 Within an hundred Miles	Servi addicti Addicere sanguinem al cujus
C. 16. An excommunicate Person	Intra centesimum lap dem Homo facer
C. 22 To take Provinces by Agreement Protectors of the Commons To have the Provinces by Lot Lib. 3. Sect 3.	Comparare provincias Tribuni plebis Sortiti prov.ncias
C. 1. To fine one a Sheep	Alicui ovem unam mu ctam dicere
C. 2. Punishment by Loss of Life Disfranchisement To banish one out of the City	Ultimum supplicium Capitis diminutio Alicui aqua & igni inter dicere ; hominem pro scribere
To set a Man's Goods to Sale	Bona alicujus proscribere
C. 3 Punishment by whip ping to Death under a Cross	Supplicium more maj rum
C. 4. To prick, ege a Man on To kick against the Pricks A hangmanly Sieve	Stimulo fodere Stimulos pugnæ cedere Carnificum cribrum
C. 5. Little Ease, the Cage	Mala mansio
C. 8. Sav'd from the Gallows	De lapide empti ; à furo redempti
To be condemned to the Fen cing-School To be condemned to fight for his Life with Beasts	Damnari in gladium ; i ludum Damnari ad bestias
C. 9 To be condemned to the drawing of Water	In Antiam damnari

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 115.

<i>I will send you to Bridewell ; to the House of Correction</i>	In pistrinum te dedam
<i>He hath Shackles about his Legs</i>	Pedes habet annulatos
<i>To be condemn'd to the Mines</i>	Damnari in metallum, in opus metalli
<i>A branded Slave ; a stigma- tiz'd Rogue ; a Rogue that is burnt in the Hand, Brow, or Shoulder</i>	Nebulo stigmaticus ; lite- ratus ; ergastulum in- scriptum
Lib. 3. Sect 4.	
<i>Chap. 1. To cite one into the Court</i>	In jus vocare
<i>To administer Justice pub- lickly, sitting on the Bench ; to keep a publick Sessions</i>	Agere pro tribunali
<i>To administer Justice pri- vately, standing on the Ground ; to hold a pri- vate Sessions</i>	Agere de plano
<i>C. 2. To judge in Person</i>	Judicare
<i>To judge by Proxy</i>	Judicium dare
<i>They are acquitted</i>	Secundum eos lis datur
<i>To be cast in ones Suit</i>	Lite, causa cadere
<i>C. 4. Condemn'd, unheard, without being heard to speak for himself</i>	Indicta causâ damnatus
<i>To work under-hand, conspire against me</i>	Coire
<i>To circumvent, deceive, cheat, oppress with false Judg- ment procured by Bribery or Confederacy</i>	Circumvenire ; circum- scribere
<i>Citizens by Birth, by Dona- tion</i>	Cives nati, adscripti, ci- vitate donati
<i>To render ones Name to the Magistrate</i>	Apud Prætozem profiteri ; nomen profiteri
<i>C. 5. To make a Speech to the People</i>	Agere ad populum
<i>To assemble the People to give their Voices</i>	Agere cum populo

116 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

C. 9. *To be in chief Command, Commander in chief in the Army*

Crown-Money

To set to Sale by the Cryer; expos'd to publick Sale.

To buy of one that hath no Power, no Right [nothing to do] to sell

An Auction; publick Sale to them that will give most

The Sale of Cæsar's Goods

Goods set at Sale

To put his Bonds to answer

To shew he hath a Mind to buy

C. 12. *A Pig with a Padding in the Belly*

C. 14. *Let him be begg'd for a Fool*

C. 15. *He is made sole Heir*

An Heir in Trust

An Heir to one quarter of the Goods

One that had the threescore and twelfth Part

An Heir to some Part of the Whole

C. 16. *To forget a Crime never committed*

To enter an Action

To chuse Judges by Lot

To play the false Protector

To desist in his Accusation, let his Suit fall

A mortgaging of Land to pay Money

To receive a Mortgage, take Land for Security,

Esse cum imperio

Aurum coronarium

Publico præconi, hæsti subijci

A malo auctore emere

Auctio; hæsta

Hæsta Cæsar's

Bona suspensa

Dejicere libellos

Digitum tollere

Porcellus Trojanus

Ad agnatos & gentiles ducendus est

Hæres in totum æssum institutus est

Hæres fiduciarius; immanarius

Hæres ex quadrante

Sextula aspersus

Hæres ex toto æsse

Calumniari

Dicam scribere, fortiri

Prævaricari

Tergiversari

Mancipatio fiduciaria

Accipere fiduciam

In the Grounding of a young Scholar 117

Coy'd Money

Bullion

To pay; repay

C. 19. To plead Sickneſs for Non-Appearance

C. 20. To put Money to Uſe.

To produce Witneſſes on both Sides

To put in Sureties

To pay his Fine

To ſtand to the Verdict of the Court

*To make an End; an Agree-
ment betwixt themſelves.*

*To tax the Coſt; and Charges
of the Suit*

*A Citation of one in the
Court*

To accuſe one of a Crime

*To enter an Action againſt
one*

*To implead one, or complain
of him*

*To demand Bail, Sureties for
Appearance*

*To enter into Bond for Ap-
pearance*

*Sentence is put off till the
third Day*

*To ſwear he doth not accuſe
faulſly, or maliciously*

*An Execution to ſeize on ones
Goods*

*He made his Appearance in
the Court*

*We muſt have longer Time to
conſider*

The Priſoner is reprieu'd.

Æſignatum

Æſ grave

Pendo: rependo

Morſum excuſare

*Pecuniam occupare; fœ-
nerari; fœnori dare;
collocare*

Litem conteſtari

Satiffactiones facere

Judicatum ſolvere

Rem ratam habere

*Lites redimere; paſſionem
facere*

Litem æſtimare

In juſ vocatio

*Postulare aliquem de cri-
mine*

*Alicui actionem; litem
intendere; diem dicere*

Nomen deferre alicujus

Vadari reum

Promittere vadimonium

Lis comperendinatur

*Calumniam jurare; deju-
rare; in litem jurare*

Edictum peremptorium

Se ſtetit

Amplius cognoscendum

Reus ampliatur

118 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

To sit upon Life and Death
on a Man

C. 21. To argue the Case pro
and con; to fight Hand
to Hand

To offer to wager a Suit in
Law with one

To wager a Suit in Law with
one

To bind himself to pay what
he shall be adjudg'd

To bind himself to stand the
Judgment of the Court

De capite alicujus quere-
re

Manum manu conferre

Sponsione; sacramento pro-
vocare; rogare; quere-
rere; stipulari

Contendere ex provocati-
one; sacramento; resti-
pulari

Satisficare judicatum solvi

Satisficare rem ratam habe-
re

L I B. IV.

Chap. 1.

TO take a solemn Oath
To serve under a Captain in
War

An old Soldier that is dis-
charg'd of his Office

He hath serv'd out his Time
in the Wars

To sound a Call

To join Battle

To make a great Shout for
Battle

To clash or ruffle with their
Armour

To give a great Shout in To-
ken the Soldiers should
truss up their Bag and
Baggage

Readily

To be in a Readiness; continu-
ously

Jurare Jovem lapidem;
per Jovem lapidem
Mereri sub duce

Miles emeritus

Stipendia confecit

Classicum canere

Conferre signa; collatis
signis pugnare

Barritum tollere

Arma concutere

Conclamare vasa

Colligatis vasis; paratis;
expedité

In procinctu stare; vi-
vere

C. 2

The Grounding of a young Scholar. 119

resb water Soldier
ation into any Art,
War

aten Soldier
kip, run, from one
to another

ue one, keep as far
Danger as I can

e to the last Push
is great Friend hath
in him

by Covert-Ways
t by open Force

ou hast undertaken a
Task

lecompt with the Pen

e cashiering of a Sol-

ing of a Soldier's Pay
lost his Pay

ng of a Soldier to
up his Spear

onour'd with a Spear
ut a Head

ishing the tenth Man
Legion

rues a good Cudgel-

dgel'd

ourg'd with Rods

y yield the Victory, to
me the better of it

soils

Tyro.

Tyrocinium

Veteranus

Agere velitationem

Ego ero post principa

Ad Triarios ventum est

Vallus vitem decepit

Cuniculis oppugnare

Machinis oppugnare

Provinciam cepisti duram

Scribendo conficere ratio-
nes

Ignominiosa dimissio

Fraudatio stipendii

Ære dirutus est

Censio hastaria

Hastâ purâ donatus est

Decimatio legionis

Fustuarium meretur

Fuste cædi

Virgis cædi

Herbam dare

Opima spolia

for the first storing of the Learner's Head and
y with Phrases. Now for the second, the
g him how to use them. This is easily shewn
ut by composing three or four Englishes (Epi-
the like) of some pretty Length, all, or most,
rds capable of Amplification by Periphrases,
an

120. *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*
and causing the Scholar, first to translate them
into the verbal, and then out of his Memory
by the Help of the Phrase-Books, according
Periphrastical Way of translating. This for Exa

Loving Friend,

It is commonly reported that you are sick.
I am very sorry for that: But I am much mor-
ry that you got your Sickness (for that they sa-
dy drinking too much. I earnestly desire you,
to repent of your having been drunk, and th-
seek to recover your Health. And if it please
that you ever be well again, then have a Care t
healthfully and soberly for the Time to come.
will be very pleasing to all your Friends, and
cially to
Your very loving Fri

*Egrotare te, Amice, vulgò dictum est. Eâ p-
re multum doleo: Atqui hanc te (quod item feru-
griudinem largius bibendo contraxisse id verò mihi
magis dolet. Vehementer te oro, primum ut ebriet-
tua paniteat, deinde uti des operam, quo conva-
Quod si Deo erit visum, ut aiqua cõe morbo re-
id tibi cura sit cum ut sanus, tum ut sobrius a-
vivas: Hoc tuis omnibus valde eri- gratum, im-
autem
*Tui Studiofissim**

*Valetudine te iniquè, Amice precharissime, tenta-
ore omnium versatur. Ea sanè res gravissimo me
afficit. Quod autem nimium indulgendo poculis (i-
quoque omnium sermone percrebuit) istum in morbum
cideris, longè graviori mœrore animi afflictus sum.
jorem in modum à te peto primum ut panitent-
esse animo, quod immodicum inurgitandi potum e-
tem contraxeris, deinde ut amissa eccepsanda
operam sedulam nave. Si vero divinè inspirante
futurum id unquam sit, ut pristinam ad valetudin-
situaris, toto tui pectore hanc incumbere in curam
la'am corporis sanitatem conserves, & ad normam*

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 121

*tatis te in posterum conformes. Hæc tu ratione es illud
facturus, quod cum universis amicis tuis erit gratissimum,
tum multo gratius*

Tui Amantissimo,

T. A.

By a few Exercises, after this Manner perform'd, the Scholar will quickly discern the Use as well as Elegancy of Latin Phrases, and delight and labour, that all his Latins may swell and shine with such like Engagements and Adornments. For his Use, to this Purpose, amongst the many extant, I recommend the little Phrase Book put forth by Mr. Farnaby, as also that larger by Mr. Huise; but especially that Book of Phrases compil'd by the learned Dr. Robinson, Archdeacon of Gloucester, and sometimes Master of Winchester School, and going under the Name of *Winchester Phrases*. Neither will my own *Idioms* be unuseful in that Case.

Else the Teacher may take the Phrases added to the several Chapters of my Particles, and out of 'em Chapter by Chapter, or otherwise, as he shall think best, compose little Englishes, and give them for Dictates to be translated by his Scholars, and profitably, no doubt.

Or yet he may take this Course, which I my self have taken with good Success: He may contrive into several Englishes these two *Collections of Phrases* out of *Hermes Anglo-Latinus*, and *Goodwin's Antiquities*, and cause 'em to be translated. This Practice will assuredly bring him to a right understanding of the Nature of a Phrase, and of the Way to use it where-e'er 'tis found, whether in Author or in Phrase-Book.

And for the Ease of the Teacher, and Benefit of the Learner, I do here communicate two Sets of such Englishes, (in Dialogues) compos'd out of the Phrases of those Collections; into the one of which, I have drawn all the Phrases in the Collection from *Hermes Anglo-Latinus*, and so, that (except in a few of the first Dialogues, made before I had thought of this Way) all the Phrases in every Dialogue lie close together, and within a narrow Compass of the
Book

122 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*
Book ; so that if the Child cannot fetch them
the Store-House of his Memory, he may find
with his Eye, within the Limits of a Page
Book : And the like is done in those compo-
Godwin's Phrases. Try and trust.



Thirty four DIALOGUES, compos'd (*in*
order to the shewing of Children the Use of Pl
out of, or agreeably to the Phrases collected
Hermes Anglo-Latinus.

DIALOGUE I.

Edward.

Thomas.

E. IF my Master will needs make me make
English into Latin, I will make as if I knew
how to make Latin. **T.** You will never make him
believe that Tale ; for he hath heard that you can
a Latin Verse ; and so he will think you make
make a Fool of him. **E.** I would be loth to make
angry at me, in regard he hath used to make me
me when I do well. **T.** Make haste then, and
an End of the Task he sets you. If you want
Thing, I will make it good. And if he be
pleas'd with your Doings, I will make you free
again.

DIALOGUE II.

William

Richard.

W. HOW long are you making me a Fire ?
make what Haste I can. **W.** Have you
my Bed yet ? **R.** No, I have Supper to make
first. **W.** Why do you not make a Leg when
speak to me, but make a Mouth at me ? **R.** But
you are always making a Stir about nothing,
nobody had made you a King, and had give

Power to make Laws at Home, and to make War Abroad; when as you (poor Man) are no such Thing. *W.* Whilst I go out of Doors to make War, make you Haste to make an End of your Business within Doors, lest I make you be whipp'd for your Idleness and Sauciness. *R.* It is not you that can make me do more than I list my self.

DIALOGUE III.

Henry.

Peter.

H. **H**OW does your Master? *P.* He is alive and sound. *H.* When I saw him last, he look'd somewhat palish. *P.* He is indeed pale most an End. *H.* He crack'd much of his Wealth; I wonder what he made of his last Year's Crop. *P.* He sold it for neither more nor less than it stood in him. *H.* Was it you that crack'd of your Exploits even now? *P.* It was I. *H.* Why then are you now in such a Fear, that you are not able to say a Word? *P.* I am by-Nature somewhat timorous, and a little Matter puts me in a Fear. *H.* Do you well, and fear not. *P.* Methinks that you, being weary with travelling, should lay you down and get a Nap. *H.* It is good Advice, especially since I have nought to do.

DIALOGUE IV.

Robert.

Arthur.

R. **I** Saw t'other Day some fine Summer Apples in an Orchard at the End of the Town. Who will go with me to see them? *A.* Roger, I believe, will. *R.* What is such a little Fellow as he good for? He shall not. *A.* If my poor Help can do any Good, you shall more command me than any petty King. *R.* Say'st thou so, my dear Heart? Then go we. But I doubt we shall not easily get over the Brick-Wall. *A.* And I am a little fearful, lest some Eye-Witness, busy'd about Household-Affairs, should see us from the
Top

124 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

Top of the House ; and if we be descry'd, we better been in the farthest Part of the World. *R.* say true : And besides, what Fools shall we be, if so small a Gain, and so poor a Pittance of Fruit shall get will amount to, we shall do that, for we besides our Pain and Shame here, we may lie burn for ever in the Bottom of Hell. *A.* I love ples well, but do not like to pay so dear for t. So let them alone,

DIALOGUE V.

Percgrine.

Edward.

P. **W**H O made that new Song, which cry'd up ? *E.* A certain pedding who hath nought but one small Field to live on Whereabouts lives he ? *E.* About the lower End the Street, at the End of the Town. *P.* I thought had liv'd in the Midst of the City. *E.* I met this Morning at Break of Day ; and he look'd like born in an unlucky Hour. But look, here's the his own self, who made that Song we are speaking of. The rest of our Discourse we must leave 'til other Time.

DIALOGUE VI.

Allen.

Benjamin.

A. **W**H Y do you not repair that House of yours ? It is like to fall. *B.* It is my Brothers ; he'll look to it, if he will. He sees its Ruinous himself every Day. *A.* Perhaps he hath not will withal to repair it ; and you your self should do something to uphold it, not only as being his Tenant, his Brother. *B.* If his House come down, then Pride of his will come down, which will not let him know himself, nor any Friend of his. Your own Discourse bewrays you to be an un Brother ; and were I your Brother, I my self w

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 125

down my House with my own Hands, rather
you should live in any House of mine. *B.* I may
have seen a Man do as much as that comes to
mine own Eyes. But what got he by that? My
her, I hope, will have some Wit in his Anger,
not pull an old House over his Ears.

L DIALOGUE VII.
Francis. *Titus.*

[If you will look here a little, *Titus*, you shall see
who comes here. *T.* Be he who he will, I care
for him; whoe'er he be, he looks like a Sloven.
If he be so, he is not by himself in that; but is
ow'd by many. Perhaps he hath tarry'd long A-
ad out of Doors; and thence it is, that he is not
gether so neat in his Cloaths: But what dost thou
k I have been doing? *T.* You look as if you had
writing; and what, I pray you, was it that
writ? *F.* I had heard, that there is coining Mo-
enough to sink a Ship; and I was writing a
nd Word of it. *T.* It is not for a little Weight
hip will sink: Speak out your Words, when you
k such loud Things. *F.* How you answer? You
sturdy as a dry Stick, that will break before it
. *T.* The Day is well nigh spent, and the Night
wing on, so fare you well. *F.* And fare you
l too, who are always doing, but never make any
dance.

DIALOGUE VIII.

George. *James.*

[Hear, *James*, that *Humphrey* is to go away within
these two or three Days. *J.* Truly, *George*, he
of a long Time been very desirous to go back
his own Country. *G.* You mean that foreign
ntry into which he went, after he was broken in-
own. *J.* You have no Reason to upbraid him
with.

126 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*
 with his Misfortune, since you have no Cause,
 any Wrong by him, to complain of him. G
 you that Misfortune, which was Indiscretion?
 could he hope to thrive, who could never forbea
 ing Mischief? J. His going hence hath had
 Luck; and it is somewhat better with him now
 formerly. G. It waxeth Night; and I am to
 hunting betimes to Morrow. So fare him well,
 you too.

DIALOGUE IX.

Christopher.

Brian.

C. **Y**OU rise, *Brian*, very early to play. I
 you would rise early to study. B. *Ch*
pher, he e is one come to intreat our Master, tha
 may play to Morrow. What will you advise hi
 do? For himself knows not what to say. C.
 him say, that the Gentleman, who lately comme
 his Son to him to be taught, earnestly desires
 to come to him, and hath sent his Man before to
 treat his Company. But stay, is he a fir Man
 to our Master? We had best take a little Time to
 vise of that. But why are you so desirous of
 ing? B. The greatest Allurement to play, is the
 stom of playing. C. But when our Master is int
 ed, we shall yet have our Fathers to intreat.
 They will be rul'd by our Master. C. No such
 ter; I wish they would; it would be better bot
 them and us.

DIALOGUE X.

Jasper.

Francis.

J. **F**Francis, your Uncle went a Journey, is he
 bak yet? F. He was not come back
 Night; but whether he be come this Morning, I
 nor tell. J. Perhaps you were gone to Bed, b
 he was come; or were gone Abroad, before he

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 127

F. Really, *Jasper*, if he should be gone away before I see him, I am undone; and for Fear I did not see him, I have made such Haste, that I run out of Breath. *G.* My Father gave me an ewell worth the eating, but I want a Knife to cut it withal, else I would give you some of it. *F.* I love Apples, especially when they are ripe, that you give me never so small a Pittance, I shall thank for it; and here's a Penknife (if that will serve) cut it withal. *J.* You are wise to have it about you.
F. And you are good for giving to me what you owe your self.

DIALOGUE XI.

Guy.

Timothy.

Timothy, what Account do you make of *Peter*?

T. Truly, *Guy*, I think him about to fall, he is great a Gamester at Dice. *G.* Some would think he deserves to be praised for that. *T.* But I think that he should be punish'd for it. For, taught by the old Proverb, I shall ever think a Dicer, the worst Player, the worser Man.

DIALOGUE XII.

Philip.

Bartholomew.

Bartholomew, are you and *Laurence* made Friends again? *B.* We differ but about one Thing; I would have him go to School to study, and he does nothing but trifle away his Time, and play the

You cannot but weep to think how he loseth himself; for what else is it to lose one's Time, but to lose one's self? *P.* You can relish nothing but idle and serious Things, and therefore are not so pleas'd with his Freedoms; but truly there is

Day but I see and observe him; and I can say nothing but what is well advis'd to come from

P. I make no Complaints but to you; and if you

you will pardon me, but for this one Time,
complain no more.

DIALOGUE XIII.

Francis.

William.

F. **W**ILL, up, and go to the Scholars Cl
from Door to Door, and call them
by one. *W.* I am a little afraid they should be
angry with me for calling them up so soon
Scholar should be at his Master's Beck: See
then; and take heed you stay not. 'Tis a Th
may do without Pains. And besides, you can
much with them: They have slept 'til bro
and, truth, 'tis Time then for Scholars to r
I am much engag'd to you; and for this Car
they were above three Miles off, I would go
you any Thing more to say to me? *F.* Only t
would be gone, and tell them Word for Wo
I say. And now you may be gone for me. *W*
what I do is at my Master's Command; and
out of Gun-shot; and it will not be for my l
be Undutiful to him; however, considering his
he is not used with Respect enough by others.

DIALOGUE XIV.

Hugh.

Christian.

H. **W**Here's *Petron* think'st thou now?
the present I believe he is at my
H. He was your Father's Foot-man. What
ment do you think him fit for? *C.* He is m
Secretary, and hopes e'er long to be the King
fellow. *H.* I imagine he is one of *Carter's* Se
if so, then I wish he be long in his right M
I hope he will, for all that: For last Night
House, he spake such Things at Supper-Time,
him a knowing Man, and one that, like *Jan*

both before and behind H. However for the present new Sects of Philosophers are applauded, in the Days of Yore they were not tolerated. I believe that he scarcely holds any Thing excellent, which is not to be found in *Bacon*. You do well to speak favourably of him, who is on your Side. C. I speak as the Case stood, and not amiss, as I suppose. And though for the present the *Aristotelian* and *Cartesian* Philosophers differ one with another, yet they every Hour grow nearer to an Agreement. H. It was but a Jest that I speak. And I would not that you should report what I said, Word for Word to any other. C. I have about ten Miles to go to Night: And so I must bid farewell.

DIALOGUE XV.

Augustine.

Geoffry.

A. **W**HAT says the World of *Anthony*? G. Truly, *Augustine*, by the most he is held an excellent Philosopher. A. I am glad of it, *Geoffry*. I never fear'd but that he would prove a Scholar; But hath he not the Report of a Spend-thrift? G. He is so far from that, that most an end he goes without his Supper to Bed. A. I would gladly see him and talk with him. G. Say you so? Then I will presently go to the Man, and bring him to you, if you will but lay this Burden on me? A. Will you do so? Then you will shew your self a Man indeed. And unless you had rather go on Foot than on Horse-back, here's a Horse for you to ride on. G. There is no need of my going: For look, here is the Man himself we are speaking of. And now I remember my self, he told me he would come to Town to Day to see you. A. I am glad on't. But you should have told me of it before. G. I ne'er thought on't.

D I A.

DIALOGUE XVI.

Ambrose.

Edmund.

A. **W**HAT Disease is *Hierom* sick of?
Ague. *A.* What Ague is he sick of?
A Quatan. *A.* Which Way go they about him?
E. That that never any before did. *A.* I pray?
E. When he is in his hot Fit, they pour cold Water.
A. That Way his Physicians never be chief among others, nor have a Civic Crown
 ven them. But at whose Charge do they practise
 on him? *E.* At mine. *A.* I wish they may be
 ful and successful. *E.* Amen.

DIALOGUE XVII.

Martin

Cyprian:

M. **C***yprian*, If you be at Leisure to hear it,
 is a Thing that I would tell thee. *C.*
 a little busie, *Martin*; but I will not hinder you
 telling it. *M.* I have Cause to be glad, that you
 so courteous. There is a Thing that troubles
C. Then since there is nothing that hinders you
 speaking, speak it out. *M.* Men are desirous
 of all, of Things that are most hurtful to them
 Well; be it so? What then? *M.* There are some
 say, that I robb'd a Neighbour's Orchard to the
C. If it be true, you have Cause to be sorry.
 am Innocent, and hate so great a Wickedness,
 is down-right stealing. But there is no room
 to clear my self. *C.* Then let it not trouble you
 suffer innocently; but take your Suffering in
 Part. Business hinder me from staying any longer
 and so I must bid you farewell.

Benjamin
Went

I bid
you farewell

DIALOGUE XVIII.

Theodore.

Benjamin.

T. **T**HE Way, *Benjamin* is, I think of the same Length, from *Huntington* to *Lincoln*, that it is from *London* to *Huntington*. How far off from *London* was *Everard* when you receiv'd from him that poor Piece of a Letter? **B.** He was two Days Journey off. **T.** What should the Matter be, that he makes no more Haste Home? **B.** I believe he is sick of his old Disease. **T.** What may that Sickness be? **B.** He is scarce of Money. **T.** He should make the more Haste for that: But if he do not want Credit, he may reckon, that so much Credit as he hath, so much Money he may have. What is it that brings him into Want? For, I hope, he neither goes a wenching, nor a fuddling at these Years. **B.** I think he is not given to Women: And 'tis but a poor deal of Wine that he drinks in a Day. So that something else, I suppose, is the Matter. And indeed, I doubt, he minds not his Calling. And what Trade soever a Man be of, he should let his Hook be always hanging, else, if he have any Matter of Money remaining of his Portion, it will soon be spent. **T.** Methinks at this time of the Day he should understand himself. **B.** So think I: But you see what a kind of Man he is.

DIALOGUE XIX.

Ephraim.

Samuel.

E. **W**HY do they not carry into *Edmund's* Chamber Things fit to kindle the Fire? **S.** Because the Weather is warm: And were it not; yet he endureth Cold the best of any Man living. **E.** He hath just his Uncle's Conditions. But is he not sick? **S.** How sick he is I cannot tell; but he eats Beef heartily. **E.** And in truth, unless I were very sick indeed, I should take the same Course that he doth. You are the nearest to him of any Man; ask

G

big

his Physicians Advice about this. S. I should envy you for your imitating him; but be Use of no Physicians. E. What Meat soever I eat in my Sickn-ss, I should beware of it, t^h hurt me not. But why hath he not the Advice Physician? S. Men that are in Debt, and able to pay, seldom ask Advice of Physicians sick soever they be; unless they be brought to Weakness, that they are not understood by any, they would tell their Case: But I must le
Edmund salutes you, farewell.

DIALOGUE XX.

Philip.

Roger.

P. **W**HAT, *Roger*, are we to have to Sup Night? *R.* That, *Philip*, is a Secret t But I saw the Cook getting somewhat ready th^{at} a strong Smell, Saffron, I think, it smelt of Well; you are like to go supperless to Bed, for lewd Pranks that you have play'd. *R.* I am indeed a little to Joaking; but you are in a Error, if you think me to have play'd any lewd P. You may deny it, that you are guilty of Fault; but the Day would fail me, if I should up all your Crimes: And I am sorry for you you are sure to be punish'd unless some I come to your Relief. But if you can wrastle c these Troubles, I shall be heartily glad. *R.* T all I mind, to be innocent, at least inoffensive. if I were the next Moment to die, I know not any can condemn me for; but that some are from doing Justice, that they know not the W judging Justly. *P.* The longer I have stay talk with you, the more I ought to quicke Speech. So fare you well. *R.* Farewel heartily

DIALOGUE XXI.

Robert

Allen.

HOW old is *Gerivase*? *A* He is about five and twenty Years' old. *R.* What Emp'oyment follows he most? *A.* I think he minds Divinity most? *R.* I thought he had study'd Physick. *A.* There are every where so many old Physicians, that here is no where Room for any new. *R.* Has he ever reach'd yet? *A.* Yes and it troubles me exceedingly, that I was not present at the Sermon. *R.* What hinder'd you from being at it? *A.* I had a great mind to have been by: But I was so busy that I was not at Leisure. *R.* What do they say he preach'd about? *A.* That he was for Kings to command, and subjects to obey. *R.* If young Men will be rul'd by me, they should not so soon preach of high Things. For they will have much ado not to be in Fault. *A.* In that I cannot but yield to you. *R.* Now it comes into my Mind, I have somewhat to do within. I pray thee come into the House. *A.* Go you before, I will follow.

DIALOGUE XXII.

Simon.

Laurence.

WHERE were the last Assizes kept? *L.* At *Lincoln.* *S.* And what News thence? *L.* *Ambrose* was condemn'd to Death. *S.* Who accus'd him of any Crime? *L.* *Peter.* *S.* And what Crime did he accuse him of? *L.* Of Treason. *S.* I thought he had only sued him in an Action of Trespass, or at most had but accus'd him of Bribery. *L.* Yes, he laid Treason to his Charge. *S.* Were he only convicted of Theft, he might be pardon'd; but being condemn'd for Treason, he will hardly escape being hang'd. *L.* Let such then as see his Death, fear his Punishment, and flee his Fault.

DIALOGUE XXIII.

*Charles.**Hervie*

C. **D**O you never write to *Barnardine*?
 little Heart to set Pen to Paper, to
 a Man that hath cast off all Goodness. C.
 you so? H. So kind have I been to him,
 a House for him; and so ungrateful has
 me, as to discharge me of his House; na
 threaten, that if ever I came to his House,
 set Fire on the House. C. I confess I cou
 Business of great Concernment to his Charg
 put a Trick upon me. H. Then I ima
 will hereafter have nothing to do with hi
 ship; but forbid him your Presence. C. I
 shall so do. H. It is no more but what he

DIALOGUE XXIV.

*Erasmus.**Merie.*

E. **W**Hy, *Merie*, did you give *Joseph*
 the Ear? M. Because he would
 me have my Inkhorn. E. You have no
 of your own over him; and I shall look to
 you shall not usurp mine. M. Be pleased to
 me this Fault, and I promise you this, that
 so no more. E. That Promise is but a Shift
 be you never so crafty, I shall put you by
 Shifts. M. I shall provide better for my se
 justly to provoke you. And if you will c
 me any Service, you shall find me faithful
 gent. E. That is often said, but seldom do
 For this once make Trial. E. I will try.

DIALOGUE XXV.

Francis.

Gervase.

HAVE you not seen old *Herbert* all this Day?
G. Yes, not very long ago. I saw him walk-
ing with his Son *Robert*. F. Had he his Gown on,
his Coat? G. His Gown. F. They that are ask'd
sir Opinion of him, report him a Man skilful in
reck, and well skill'd also in martial Discipline.
Yes; but they say the Son wipes the old Man of
Money; and is like to strip him of all his Goods.
And, what is worse, his Friends keep his Tricks from
his Father. F. Such a Son deserves to be made to go
without his Portion. But put him in Mind of his
Duty to his Father. G. Young Men are warn'd of
many Things, which are evil; but flee few: So 'tis
no purpose. F. You cannot tell till you have try'd.
I'll treat this of you. Let me prevail with you. G.
I can do no Harm to try. I will do my Endeavour.

DIALOGUE XXVI.

Samuel.

Gerard.

WHAT's the Matter with *Bradwardine* this
Morning, that he hath such a low'ring
look? G. He is as busy as can be a writing. S. In
writing what is he so busy? G. In writing Verses,
whereof he must write out a whole Book. S. And I
to write so many Epistles, that I have no Leisure
to make my Theme; I wish you were at Leisure to
help me. G. Where's the last Epistle you wrote? S.
I have laid it a drying. G. Will you go a fishing,
when you have written that Epistle you are in hand
withal? S. I am not yet at Leisure; but you may
call me, when you please. And yet I wonder you
should have nothing else to do. I wish your Father's
writing you do as you list, make you not grow every
day worse than other. G. There's no Danger, I shall
take a Care of my self. S. Then leave your prating
and be gone. G. So I will. Mind you your Concerns.

I Thine a scholar

DIALOGUE XXVII.

*James.**Christopher.*

J. **A**Las, *Christopher*, what will become of *C.* Why to *James*? I saw him in both the last Day of *January* and the third of *February*. *J.* Yea; but they say he is given to *Jove*. *C.* That indeed doth not become a Man of that Age (tho' many Things of like Sort do happen in the Life of Man, as I could shew by Instance; which I have in Readiness, if it were besides my Purpose) and therefore 'tis fit he should be so for his Folly. *J.* His Master, I understand, is hard by: I shall hope to see him by and by, and then I will tell him of him. *C.* His Master, I am sure, will not take it ill. *J.* That's well.

DIALOGUE XXVIII.

*Cyriac.**Paul.*

C. **P**AUL, *Augustine* greets you well. *P.* How does he himself, *Cyriac*? *C.* At present he is afflicted with a Cough; besides that, he is lame of his Feet. I believe he is a Man of good Age. *C.* Yes, he is a Man of good Age. *P.* What Account can you make of him? *C.* Travel all *Europe* over by Sea and Land, and you will hardly find an honest Man; yet because he is red-hair'd, he is of no Account to me, which afflicts him so, that sometimes he is unable to speak for Grief. *P.* For your sake, what others think, I shall have a good Opinion of him, and you shall do well to comfort him, and be of good Courage. *C.* In Confidence of your Courtesy, I have said thus much of him; and in good Condition you will have a Kindness for him, and never be a Servant to you.

DIALOGUE XXIX.

Theodore.

Arthur.

T. **W**HAT ails *Demea*, that he is in such an ill Humour? He do h n't use to be angry for nothing. *A.* I know not, unless it be that his Daughter has had a Child by *Darius*: sure there is something in it; for he is not able to speak for Trouble of Mind. *T.* Is he not rather sick of Want. *A.* I do not think that is the Matter; for he is in no Want. *T.* Whatever it be, you that are of the same Temper with him, may do well to pacify his Mind. *A.* In Confidence of his good Nature, and our old Acquaintance, I will try what I can do.

DIALOGUE XXX.

Peter.

Roger.

P. **H**OW does *Gobard* prize his Silver Tankard and Spoons? *R.* He offers them for ten Pounds. *P.* He asks too much for his Commodities. Will he not take under ten Pound for them, think you? *R.* You will not buy them but at a great Rate; and therefore it will be your Wisdom, tho' they be not all out worth so much, yet not to set them altogether at nought, as the Fashion is. Besides, 'tis said, he hath been offer'd eight Pound for his Tankard. *P.* I care not a Straw for that: It doth not weigh forty Ounces and for what some think about it, I weigh it not thus much. Others have other Thoughts. And one skilful Seller, that will not go a Nail's Breadth from the Truth, is worth a thousand unskilful Cheapeners, who only speak by Guess. *R.* I take all in good Part that you say, and bid you farewell.

DIALOGUE XXXI.

*Guy.**Edmund.*

G. **W**HAT Countryman is *Jasper*? E. He is a *Lincoln* Man; but his Ancestors were of *Lancashire*. G. I believe him come of some great House. E. Well born, I believe he is; for in all Contracts, I still observe, he stands to his Word; and it is a Thing proper to a Gentleman in his Dealing to rely on Truth, not on Craft. G. *Lincoln* is now unguarded, tho' formerly well fortify'd, and less, I believe, by the half, than it was anciently. E. I think as much; and thence, I suppose, the Proverb, *Lincoln* was, had its Rise. G. How far is it from *London*? E. It is two Days Journey off at least if not three. G. And yet once one, that went out at three a Clock in the Morning from *London*, supp'd that Night at *Lincoln*. E. Then he rid Post.

DIALOGUE XXXII.

*Patrick.**Dennis.*

P. **H**OW comes it to pass, *Dennis*, that you are walking abroad at this Time of the Night? D. I might ask you the same Question, *Patrick*. But why, for the Space of some Years (I may safely say for this full four Years) I have been used to sit up 'till late at Night; since when I do not once matter going to Bed betimes. P. Then certainly you sleep 'till fair Day. D. 'Till fair Day, do you say? nay even till broad Day. P. You never rise, and walk, I believe, by Night; nor are disquieted with Dreams in Sleep-Time. D. No such Thing hath indeed befallen me for many Years past. P. For how long is your going into *France* put off? For a Year, or for a Month? D. I think but still ten Days hence. I am not certain now; but I shall know within this two Days. My Father talks of my going Day after Day. And is Truth I should have gone six Years ago. But
until

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 139

until within this Month, it is a Twelve-month since, I heard him speak a Word of it. P. Within these four Days, I being his Setter on, he resolv'd it. But I have not seen him since then.

DIALOGUE XXXIII.

Stephen.

Gerard.

S. **H**OW go the Squares in *Italy*? G. Several that came from about *Tarentum*, say, that at *Rome* all is well, and at *Milan*; but not at *Croton*, nor at *Venice*. S. Have you heard what things were done before *Naples*? G. No; but they say, that the *French* Count is departed from before *Parma*. S. What *French* Count do you speak of? G. Him that in Council sits next to the General. I have forgot both his Name and Title. S. How far was his Camp from the City? G. Above half a Mile. We'l if you have any Thing else to say, say it to Day, and presently; for I must be gone; and to Morrow shall be up to fit my self for going sooner than I am wont. S. I have done. G. Then farewell to you.

DIALOGUE XXXIV.

Anthony.

Miles.

A. **I** cannot but wonder, *Miles*, how *Demea*, a Man never born to Honour, should come to that Height of Insolence, as to despise his Kindred, and to say, when any of them comes near him what do you touching of me? What do you coming at me? M. He thinks they gape after his Estate. A. I have a Mind to creep into his Favour, as far as 'tis possible to be done. but that I know not which Way to take to do it. M. He spake not a Word of you when I was with him last, whereby I could gather that he intended to make you his Heir, and therefore you had best give over your Enterprize. A. Then, though I have many Things to say, yet I shall forbear to speak

G 5

140 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*
speak of more : and rest content with my own
M. 'Tis very well.



Thirty three DIALOGUES *compos'd*
or agreeable unto, the Phrases collected
Godwin's Antiquities.

DIALOGUE I

Thomas.

George.

T. **W**HEN *Romulus* was to build a new
he did wisely to set out where the
of it should be. G. But did he not demolish
old Town first, that he might have Room
Place of that old one to set his new one? T.
he built it all Stick and Stone from the Ground
design'd it to be a Sanctuary, whither Male
should fly for Safety, as to an Altar. G. But I
he design'd that Justice should be done there to
ry one; and that to that End Assizes should be
there. T. Yes, and he appoin'd where the
should be kept; and ordain'd too, that huge
should be kept for registering of Laws, and records
Acts of Justice. G. Such Designs do not proceed
an unconstant Wit, or wavering Mind, but from
Person of solid Judgment, whose is no random
Knowledge, notwithstanding that he in riding
have with him his Vaulting Horses, and Vault
and then from the one to the other. T. Nor for
Person so old, as for Dotage was to be barr'd
giving his Voices at the Election of Magistrates
of one, that in a Race, could, for Strength, hold
from the Start to the Staff; and would for Continuance
in any good Purpose, persevere from the Beginning
to the End. G. Not from any ignoble Person,
had not Courage, upon honourable Terms, to
the Lists with any Appellant, that should give
a Challenge. T. Nor did he only set out, where
City should be, but also by the Voice of the People

appointed where Temples should be built, and Churches should stand; so that at publick Altars, and not only by private Fire-hearths, Men might serve God. *G.* Under such a Prince, who would not chearfully serve in the Wars, and manfully fight for God and his Country?

DIALOGUE II.

Edward.

Anthony.

E. TELL me, I pray you, *Anthony*, whether *Cornelius* were a free-born Citizen, or a free-made Citizen; and speak from your Heart. *A.* I should think my self curs'd to Hell, if I should lie to you. I believe him a Citizen, made such by *Co-optation*. *E.* I thought him indeed but a Gentleman of the first Head, a meer upstart Citizen; one made free by some kind of Master, that had a Mind to set him at Liberty, and give him his Freedom; and, that he might no longer pass among inferior Persons, paid the Debts that he was run into, not suffering any to sue him for Non-payment; and give him an Estate, whereby he was enabled to keep a Horse for the Service of the War; and thence I judg'd it was, that by Degrees he came to be a Nobleman. *A.* Whatever he was once, all the Senators of *Rome*, as well those of the Upper as Lower House, do now think very well of him, and set much by him.

DIALOGUE III.

Thomas Henry.

Gervase Gervase.

H. THO' some are not to be persuaded by Reason so much as by a good Cudgelling, that there are any Gods at all, whether of the greater or lesser Nations, yet the *Romans* were perswaded, that each Nation had their Country-Gods, each City their Tutelar Gods, and that there were Gods common to all; that the Women had their Guardian Angels; nay, that

that every Man had from his Birth a good and evil Angel attending on him. G So have I heard, *Henry*; and that these Angels did observe every Man's Actions; and were angry when any thing was done amiss; so that if any Misfortune befall a Man (as there is no Man without his Misfortune) they would say it was done against the Pleasure of the Gods. *H. Gervase*, those *Romans* were jolly Fellows: And tho' amongst them there were some that would be Thieves to their own Carcasses, yet there were others who would pamper their Kite, and though they liv'd in never so little a Cottage, or were Men of no settled Dwelling, yet they would keep their Feasts, and therein play the Gluttons, and after all drink their Grace-Cup also. G They were Lords of the World, and so might do what they list'd for any Body else.

DIALOGUE IV.

*Edmund.**William.*

E. I Suppose, *William*, you discern it is Seed-time; *W.* Yes, *Edmund*; and in regard it hath thunder'd luckily, let us with good Luck begin the Work; a Work truly not to be disdained, no not by the *Profectors of the Commons*. *E.* I should be sorry to begin it with ill Luck: And that we may go about it with the Counsel of some *Augur*, let us consult *Craesus* in the Case, and desire him to offer up a Sacrifice, for us; and if upon his Sacrificing lucky Tokens appear, we will not make our Feast without Wine. *W.* agreed; but we must go to some other Person; for I have heard that he hath long since given over being Priest.

DIALOGUE V.

*Arthur.**Stephen.*

A. I Suppose *Stephen*, it is no News to you, that after a Denunciation of War, it came to a Battle betwixt the *Romans* and the *Greeks*. But what

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 143

I pray, was the Issue of that Fight? S. The Battle truly was fought with various Success for a long Time: But at last the *Roman* General, who had challeng'd the Enemy into the Field, encountering the *Grecian* General Hand to Hand, by his own Strength overcame and kill'd him; and though it was a hard Task to do this, yet, that he did it, is undoubtedly true. A. No doubt, but after the Battle was over, they feasted at Supper on dainty Chear. S. In that they did nothing but what was right and usual.

DIALOGUE VI.

Richard.

Thomas.

R. **I**T was a sumptuous Feast, *Thomas*, which we were entertain'd at to Night. T. You might, *Richard*, have call'd it a *Commencement-Supper*. May be that made it daily grow in Honour as well as Virtue. R. But I wonder you should approach it without due Respect, with unwashen Hands and dirty Feet. T. Eigh! the Pot calls the Pan Burnt-Arse. Were not you as bad your self? R. None but a rude Fellow would have said so. Besides, how you devour'd, what you should but lightly have tasted of, and even before Grace was said! 'Tis a Wonder you had Patience to stay 'till the Sacrifice was slain. By these ill Manners of yours you bring me to suffer for your Folly. T. What should a Man do, when he is about any Thing, but mind what he is about? I cannot abide to be so long at, Shall I? Shall I? Beside, no Bit's sweeter, than the first Tasting. R. Had you been a *Roman*, you must have satisfy'd for your Crime by the Sacrifice of a Lamb. T. 'Tis better that I am what I am.



DIA

DIALOGUE VII.

*Anthony.**Tobias.*

A. YOU hear, *Toby*, that my Cousin *Andrew* intends to marry your Niece *Joanna*. **T.** Yes, *Anthony*, I hear so. They say the Marriage-Contracts are written down in Nuptial Tables, and attested by the Seals of Witnesses to those Contracts. He also hath provided himself with a Ring to give her; and she, of a yellow Veil wherein to be brought to him; and both of them have touched (all after the manner of the ancient *Romans*) both Fire and Water. **A.** And are they not making a Marriage-Bed too, wherein the new marry'd Couple are to lie, after the Bridegroom hath led his Bride by Torch-light from her Father's House to his own? **T.** Yes; and they are providing Chear for the Wedding Feast, to be held the next Day. **A.** I perceive they are resolv'd it shall not be a Wedding and no Wedding; and therefore will omit no Ceremony, not so much as the parting of the Bride's Hair with a Fencer's Spear, nor the sprinkling of the new marry'd Woman with Water. **T.** I wish their Marriage-Day may be follow'd with a perpetual Succession of Days, still every one more happy than the former. **A.** I hope it may be so, if he suffer her to be a Lady, where he is Lord; and she so daily grow in Grace, that he may have no just Occasion to divorce her. **T.** It is a sad Thing, when Things come to that pass, that the Husband is forc'd to tell his Wife, that he will have nothing to do with her, and bid her take her Things and be packing. **A.** It seldom comes to this, 'til the one or the other hath cast off all Goodness. **T.** I hope better Things of those two.

DIALOGUE VIII.

Polydore.

Archibald.

P. WILL you go, *Archibald*, to the Funeral of old *Reginald*? *A.* That old Earl is Dead it seems at last. *P.* Yes and we must follow him in Order, as Nature shall permit. *A.* I fear we shall come too late; for above an Hour ago I heard the Bell-man crying that it was then Time to go; for he was then carrying forth a-doors. *P.* Perhaps so; but the Funeral Rites require some Time to be orderly perform'd in, and we may come soon enough for all that, at least to his Funeral-Sermon. *A.* Who is to make it? *P.* His Cousin *Cameron*, as being the next a-kin to him, and who clos'd his dying Eyes, and receiv'd his last Breath. *A.* How long has he been kept up unbury'd? *P.* Seven Days; and in all that Time his Body hath been every Day wash'd with Water and anointed with Oyl, in hope he might by those Means be reviv'd, if not quite Dead, but only asleep. After that he was given up for gone, and his Body in a Gown p'ac'd upon a Bed, with his Feet forward, to be carry'd forth to Burial. *A.* His then is not like to be a Burial and no Burial? *P.* No sure, will you go then? *A.* E're we get thither, the Priest will thrice have sprinkled the People with Water; and the chief Mourning Women have told them they had their Leave to depart: So I think it to no Purpose to go. *P.* Then farewell; I will go by my self.

DIALOGUE IX.

Jonathan.

Giles.

J. KNOW you the Reason, *Giles*, why the *Romans* did on the fourth of *April* put on their best Cloaths? *G.* Who I? Why not? That is no Secret: They began the Plays, instituted in Honour of their great Goddess *Cybele*, to be celebrated. *J.* 'Tis better than I look'd for, I perceive that neither you have

lost

146 *The Art of Teaching improv'd,*

lost your Labour, nor your Father his Cost in your Education. G. I suppose you can tell also why, when there was running of Coach-Races, and fighting at Whorl-Bats in the great Circus, the People flock'd thither. J. Many were the Reasons; and some went for one Reason, others for another; some to see, and some to be seen; and some because they had a Mind to lay Wagers; they being of different Factions that run and fought. G. Had you said this in a Company of Learned Persons, you had been highly applauded for your Answer. I am alone, and can only say, Well.

DIALOGUE X.

Walter.

Herman.

W. **E**usebius, I hear, having had a Desire of his accomplishment, hath vow'd to build a Church. *H.* Yes, and to institute a Feast too in Honour of that Deity whom he dedicates his Church unto. *W.* Then he is liable to make good his Vow; for when solemn Vows are made to God, the Maker of them is bound to the Performance of his Vow. *H.* This he knows; and therefore he hath bound himself to make good his Vow. *W.* 'Tis Well: The paying of his Vow may be the obtaining of another Prayer. *H.* Like enough.

DIALOGUE XI.

Albert.

Lewis.

A. **A**mongst the Honorary Games, wherewith the People of Rome were complimented by Muneraries, Fencing, I think. *Lewis*, was in greatest Request. *L.* I think so to, *Albert*; especially when not Slaves and Captives only fought therein, but Hiring-Citizens, yea, and Noblemen; and they fought not for Pleasure, but for Life, and that without Discharge; being bound by Oath to fight to Death.

Death or yield their Bodies to be whipp'd or burnt.

A. Yet did they in a Flourish make Use of Weapons for Show, before they fought at Sharps with Weapons for Fight. *L.* Yes, yes: And it was one thing when they flourish'd, another thing when they fought. Their Flourish was but sportive, their Fight was earnest. When once they came to fight with naked Weapons, the Stoutest He was sometimes put into a Maze, and forc'd to change his Posture, yea, tho' he were one that had won many a Prize, and had been thought worthy to be discharg'd: For besides the downright Blows which they dealt, they endeavour'd to put Tricks upon one another. *A* Sure it was pleasant to behold the hood wink'd Fencers winking and striking, either on Horseback, or out of Chariots. *L.* Just as pleasant, as it is to hear two ignorant Persons contending, after their Manner, about Things which neither of them understandeth. *A* Well; not all their ribbanded Garlands, nor pecuniary Rewards, should ever have tempted me to dare any Man to fight in such Combats, wherein my self must lye at the Mercy of the wavering People; and I must be kill'd or sav'd, as they should hold down or turn up their Thumb. *L.* Nor me neither, I trow: For tho' some Men, good at nothing, not only like, but praise these recreatory Diversions in lofty Style, yet I desire that the end of my Life may be attended with Gladness, yet at least with Quietness.

DIALOGUE XII.

Seleucus.

Pomponius.

S. **T**HIS I observe, *Pompony*, that 'till Children be grown to Man's Estate, they will not leave Boys Play; but be either playing at Ball, or whipping of Tops, or playing at Even or Odd, or guessing Cross or Pile. *P.* Yea, *Seleucus*; and when they are grown up to Years of Discretion, yet still they will be playing at Chess, or Tables. *S.* It were allow'd that Men should refresh themselves now and then with.

with those Divertisements, did they not venture much (sometimes their whole Estate) on one or unlucky Cast. *P.* He that is on the losing he hath no other Way many times to recover lesser Losses, but by hazarding greater; and that is for winning or losing all at one Throw. *S.* like these Things the more, in regard many of the Inequality of the Gamesters in point of who off, in that, are a Goose in a Chicken I shall be thought among Friends to have broke League of Hospitality, who being challeng'd to shall refuse to gratify a Friend therein, especially when it is but at small Games they are to play. They say, indeed, 'tis better to play at small than sit out; but too many times they begin small Games, and go on to greater, till much money is lost on one Side or other; and that Thing which I dislike. *P.* It will be so where cannot rule their Affections and Passions, but slave their Reason to their Appetite, else they give over in good Time, and before they have more than they can be willing to spare. *S.* V Gamesters resolve before hand to give all their winnings to the Poor, they would not be so greedy Play as they are. *P.* I think so too. *S.* And if would resolve not to lose at one Time above a moderate Sum, prefix'd within their own Minds, would not be so great Losers as many times they are. *P.* No doubt of that.

DIALOGUE XIII.

Abraham

Jeremy.

A. WERE you, *Jeremy.* at my Lord Geiton's Supper t'other Night? *J.* Yes *Abr.* I was. He was very earnest with me in his Invitation to come; so I went. *A.* I believe my Lord at his Table unbidden Guests enow. And truly he bidden me, I had needed but small Invitation. And how were ye entertain'd? *J.* Not with a

nor with scanty Provisions, but a plentiful Supper ; in the first Mess were serv'd up Mulberries, Sausages, Eggs, &c. In the last Vassery of sweet and delicious Meats. In the middle Course for Venison, and that I took for the chief Dish, though some might prefer Beef before it, and take that for the most substantial Dish. And from the Beginning to the Ending, there was Plenty of Mirth and Wine. *A.* A right Supper indeed you tell me of ; a Supper in which one could hardly have told what to eat of hear'yliest. *J.* So as I tell you were we entertain'd. *A.* Much Good do's you.

DIALOGUE XIV.

Allen.

Peter.

A. **H**OW do you intend to order your Journies this Winter. *P.* On the last Day of *December*, I shall be at *Lincoln*, on the first of *January* at *Grantham*. Thence on the fourth of *January* I will remove to *Stamford* ; and on the fifth of *January* lie at *Cambridge*. On the twelfth of *January* I will set forward towards *London*, and on the thirteenth of *January*, I hope to lie at my Sister's House in *London*. *A.* But when intend you to reach *Paris* ? *P.* At Latter *Lammas*. *A.* But why will you travel (as I observe you intend to do) only on some certain Days, and not stir on others ? *P.* Because some of those Days they account fortunate, and some of them unfortunate ; and I shall be leth to take any Journey on an unlucky Day. *A.* But I thought you would have said, because some of these Days were Holydays, or half Holydays at least, and other working Days. *P.* We Lawyers do not much mind nor matter, whether Days be all holy, or half holy, but whether they be Law-Days or no. For on whole Court-Days we wholly attend the Courts, and on half Court-Days as much as is necessary. Upon Non-Letter Days we have other Things to do. *A.* Yes, I believe you have always one wrangling Fellow or other to be withal ; and on those Days you converse with

Lincoln

with such Fellows to get new Work, for which will set up 'till towards Midnight, and rise again need be, a little after Midnight. P. Away, S you are a Wag I'll have you mark'd, if I live black Sheep. A. Your most humble Servant, *Noramus*. P. And fare you well, good Mr. Dulm.

DIALOGUE XV.

Erasmus.

Conradus.

B. **W**HEN think you will that old Man give up the Ghost? C. Long since made his Will, as I hear, in a Meeting of Priests. Made he it in Writing, or by Word of Mouth In Writing. E. I wonder whom he made his Heir. C. His Brother's eldest Son. E. And hath he nam'd for next Heir to him? C. His youngest Son. E. And what hath he done for *Everard*? C. He hath a Legacy given. E. A good Thing for men to make their Wills in *Ver* for so is the Possession of their Goods, when the dead, likely to be according to, and not against Wills of the Testators. C. So was the Law of And for my Part I like no Innovations. E. A such a Law were now to be made, I should v it was desir'd. I think the Man hath so liv'd, be well belov'd and esteem'd by his Fellow Citizens. C. Out of doubt: For when he stood for the Bur

DIALOGUE XVI.

George.

Herulc.

G. I Think, *Herulc*, that before the Invention of Parchment, they did use to write on the Leaves of an *Egyptian* Rush, call'd *Papyrus*. H. Yes, *George*, and before that on the inward Rind of Trees. Nay, I have read, that they sometimes wrote in leaden Plates, and sometimes in Tables of Wood cover'd with Wax; some Remembrances of which Things I found in my Study the other Day, as I was looking among my foul Papers. G. But, I trow, they did not write on those Tables with Pen and Ink, as we do on Paper. H. No, no: They wrote with an Iron Instrument, which they call'd a *Style*, which was sharp pointed at one End, and broad but sharp-edg'd also, at the other End; that with the sharp Point they might engrave any Thing into those Tables, and with the broad Edge scrape any Thing out, which they had written and mislik'd. G. That was wisely contriv'd; for the most cautelous may sometimes have Occasion to recant what he hath said. H. And of these Materials they compos'd. not only their Books of Accompt, and Statute-Books; but also Letters of Protection, and Bills of Sale; and even their ordinary Letters sent by Letter-Carriers from one to another; which they so clos'd with Thread and Wax that nothing could be read on the Inside 'till the Seal was broken up, though it were easie for any Man to know from whom the Letter came, if sent from a Friend, by the Hand and Seal on the Out side. G. They did then contrary to what we do now; for every Age hath its Fashion. And even the *Romans* themselves in After-Times chang'd their Manner of Writing, and wrote with Pen and Ink on Paper, whereunto especially, if it were a Book which they wrote, they did fasten a Roller. H. It is no Shame to lay down old Customs, and take up new, when the new are better than the old. Hardly an Author doth write a Book, but he doth change his Mind as to some Things,

before

S. Siboury

152 *The ART of Teaching improv*
hath brought it to an End. And when M
changeable, it's no Marvel if Manners and
change too.

DIALOGUE XVII

Paul.

Ulpian.

P. PRAY, *Ulpian*, give me some Account
Romans Manner of making their Law
shall readily do it, *Paul*, as far as my poor
serve you. And the first I call to Mind is,
one of those *Magistrates*, qualified for
pose, had by himself first consider'd of a Law
to be made, and then consulted some Lawyers
if not the whole Senate about it, he did put
Law to be made, by hanging it out three Months
together in the View of the People, that the
necessity of it might be examin'd and consider'd.
P. Very well : And what was the next Thing?
The next Thing was, that the People being
together, and the Law read by the Town-Clerk
that had promulg'd it, did, by an Oration to the
People, move that the Law might be made, being
times seconded by his Friends, and sometimes
by others. *P.* And what follow'd then?
Names of Tribes, Centuries, or Parishes being
put into a Pitcher, and the Lots shaken together,
the People gave their Votes, that Tribe suffraging
which was chosen, of which Prerogative Tribe he
was the good Fortune to have the Voices, was
the Hope of obtaining the Voices of the other
Tribes, which seldom or never swerv'd from the De-
cision of the Prerogative Tribe. Then, unless
the *Magistrate* or *Augur* did forbid the Proceeding,
some chance'd to fall ill of the Falling Sickness,
or some other Thing happen'd whereby the
Assembly was dissolv'd, the Law was enacted. *P.* And
what was done next? *U.* After the Law had
been approv'd and recorded, it was publish'd and
kept in the Treasury-House, keeping its Force 'till

uncell'd. P. I thank you for this Account, which
ou have given me of this Thing. U. Much Good
ay it do you.

DIALOGUE XVIII.

Caleb.

Jacob.

THE Romans, as I understand, *Jacob*, were not
all Men of one Rank in point of Estate, but
some were Classic Men and some Men under Value.
Yes, *Ca'eb* : And you shall read in Authors of best
account, that there were amongst them Men of small
means also, reckon'd only by the Pole, and good for
nothing but to get Children. C Such were useful
however, if it were but to make Drummers and
Trumpeters of, on just Occasion to sound the Alarm
at the Retreat ; though Men of higher Rank, even of
the fourth Class, usually perform'd those Offices. J.
They were, I imagine, at great Charges in giving
Feasts, providing Dinners, and exhibiting Shows un-
to the People ; besides the Pains and Troubles of sa'u-
ing the Citizens, and complimenting of them, and
soliciting for their Votes, when they su'd for any
Office. C. Yes sure ; and moreover, both when they
enter'd into an Office, and departed out of it, especi-
ally if they went off with Honour, they were at
charges. J. But did every Suitor for an Office obtain
his Desire, if he had the most Voices, though not so
many as the Law requir'd ? C. That I do not think ;
but I believe it was necessary, that every one should
have as many Voices as the Law did require, before
he could be chosen into Office. J. What you say is
very probable ; and I have nothing to say against it.
So farewell.

some

DIA

DIALOGUE XIX.

Edmund.

Cyriac.

E. **M**UCH, *Cyriac*, is talk'd of the *Roman* a Garment so proper to the *Romans* they are often thence call'd the *Gown-Men*; *Greeks* from their Cloak, were call'd the *Cloak-Men*. Can you give me any Account of that Sort of Garment? *C.* Somewhat, *Edmund*, I can say, a little, because I have only read, or heard of it, but never saw one. And first you must know that the Gown was so proper to the Men, that it was a Note of Infamy for a Woman to wear it. Secondly, that it was not worn by any during their Childhood, nor 'till they were grown up in Years of Discretion. Thirdly, that it was of several Colours, shewing the Wearers to be Suitors, Mourners, or arraign'd Persons; for according to the Variety of their Fortunes, so did they change their Apparel. Fourthly, that it was of diverse Fashions, too, looser or straiter, open or close, plain or broider'd, as the Age or Condition of the Person requir'd. *E.* Young Students of Oratory, being so near Man's Estate, as also the Lord's Generals, Priests, Secretaries, and, in short, all Citizens of better Fortune and Esteem, did wear, I think, a white Gown; the Commonalty, or inferior Sort of People, a black one. *C.* It was not so at first; But in the latter Part of Time it came to be so. But all who thought of Peace, did put off their Arms, and went to their Cassocks, especially when it was necessary that they should make them ready for War, and not be hindred by all Thoughts of loose Women, Love of whom Men are oft too much addicted to in Times of Peace. *E.* They who are such, seek for Deeds whereby to arrive at the Honour of War, and not of a plain, embroidered, purple, triumphal Gown: No more than they, who, when they should be arming themselves, are despoiling Virgins. *C.* Well, tho' I have said enough of my own to do, and, as we say, by

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 155

roverb, *near is my Shirt, but nearer is my Skin*; yet if you have any Business of yours to command me, you shall find me in a Readiness to perform it. E. I have nothing farther to trouble you withal at present; and besides, having through Carelessness lost my purse, I must go seek it. C. Then, my dear Edmund, adieu.

DIALOGUE XX.

Robert.

Alexander.

A *Alexander*, I have read, that the Kings of Rome had Se jeants to go before them, carrying Bundles of Rods, and Axes ty'd up in those Bundles; and their Consuls the like, when their Kings were given out? *A.* Yes, *Robert*, they had so. *R.* What Use were the Rods for? *A.* To punish small Offenders. *R.* And what the Axes? *A.* To punish great Offenders. *R.* But why were they ty'd in Bundles? *A.* Not only for Conveniency of Carriage, but that the Anger of the Magistrate, who ought to do nothing rashly, might be somewhat allay'd, whilst they were unbinding. *R.* How long continu'd the Kings in the r Office? *A.* Their whole Lives. *R.* And how long the Consuls? *A.* A Year; unless in the mean time, upon any Occasion, they were discharg'd of their Office: For to a Decree of the Senate, after a Thing had been once propounded to the Senate, and determin'd by the Senate, all Officers were to yield, *Dictators* excepted. *R.* Tho' the Opinion of the Fore-man of the Senate was ask'd, yet would not every Man be of his Opinion? *A.* No, no; sometimes they departed down from their Benches, and divided themselves into Sides, each siding with him whose Cause he favour'd most; else by holding up, and beckoning with their Hands, they signify'd what Sides they would take; and sometimes they determin'd the Matter by polling. *R.* Happy sure was he who was favourably heard by the Senate, and came off well with the Senate. *A.* Yes; but what

py he who was condemn'd by the Senate. R. all the Senators always present at the Assent the Senate-House? A. They were either present else fin'd for their Absence, if they could not a lawful Excuse for themselves. R. Did they pay their Fines? A. Either they paid them, the Common Treasurer did strain their Goo 'Tis best for every Man to do his Duty in his and but just it is, that he, who neglects his should suffer for his Neglect.

DIALOGUE XXI.

Richard.

Simon.

R. **S**imon, what Officers succeeded Kings in S. *Consuls* were the next after Kings. R. they *Consuls* at their first Institution? S. were first called *Pretors*, as going before the P after *Judges*, because of their judging the P and lastly, *Consuls*, as being they who should c for the Good of the People. R. How old was one to be before he could be made Consul? S. three, and besides he was to have undergone the of *Questor*, *Ædile*, and *Pretor*. R. How long con the *Consuls* in their Consulship? S. They elected *Consuls* on the twenty fourth of *October* enter'd on the Consulship upon the first of *Jan* and they continu'd in Office a whole Year, in an Ivory Chair drawn in a Chariot, and wear purple embroider'd Gown; and being call'd, i continu'd the whole Year in their Office, *Honora* ordinary *Consuls*; whereas if they dy'd, or we pos'd in the mean Time, they were call'd *U nary*, or *Supp'y Consuls*. R. Of the two Co which had the Precedency? S. He who ha most Children. or was the elder Man; or at the of the Election was pronounc'd before the c being thence call'd *Præ Major*, or *Prior Consu* What were they call'd after their Consulship w did? S. They were at last call'd *Consulares*

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 157

and whereas formerly Deeds were dated from the founding of the City, the Manner of dating was by subscribing the Names of the present Consuls; and even what was propos'd against the next Year, was said to be design'd to be, or be done, under the next Consul.

DIALOGUE XXII.

Edward.

Benjamin.

E HOW many Years. *Ben.* did the *Censors* continue in their Office? *B.* Ordinarily five, in which Time they did once by Sacrifice purge the *Roman* Army, whence the Space of five Years came to be call'd *Lustrum*. *E.* What Beast did they sacrifice, when they muster'd the Army? *B.* A Sow, a Ram, and a Bull (after they had led him thrice round the Army;) whence the Sacrifice was call'd the Sow-Ram-Bull-Tribe. *E.* What did belong to the Office of the *Censors*? *B.* To value every Man's Estate, to register his Name, and place him in a fit Sacrifice. *E.* Had they nothing else to do? *B.* Yes; they did enquire into Mens Lives, and reform their Mannors. *E.* How did they punish Offenders? *B.* They did depose Senators and degrade others from their Tribe. *E.* But whilst we talk of other Mens Offences, and Punishments, we shall have the Monitor by and by, with a *Censor*-like Authority, noting and rebuking us. We had best to our Books. *B.* I think so too.

DIALOGUE XXIII.

John.

Allen.

J. WHAT, *Allen*, belong'd to the Office of the *City-Pretors*? *A.* To judge not only of Civil Cases, but Capital also; and not only to lessen the Condition of the Offender, but also to condemn him to die. *J.* In what Order did they proceed in the Administration of Justice. *A.* First, they did

H 2

grant

tor's Form of Speech, when he did deliver
Gods, that Phrase was borrow'd, and con-
signify. *J.* I conceive also, that they
Causes only within the City, and had not
like that of the City-Præfect, who had the
of all Causes within an hundred Miles of
You are in the right of it for that. *J.* But
not Officers in *Rome* call'd Propretors? *A.* Yes
the City-Prætors had born their Office for
they went the next Year into some Province
the same Office there; and then they were
~~prætors~~, taking their Provinces by Agreement
having them by Lot. *J.* I suppose the Go-
and Governors of the City did often alter.
often; and at one Time they had a Sort
Strikes whom they call'd *Sacrosancti*, whom
far from being lawful to hurt, or violent
in Word, that if any violated the Law, who
were made such, they accounted him an ex-
ecrated Person. *J.* What were these call'd
Protectors of the Commons.

ing Men out of the City, with more or less Consent to Place; and sometimes by setting their Goods to Sale. *W.* These were Punishments for Citizens: what did they do to their Servants? *R.* When they design'd not to kill them, but only to shame them, they did make them carry a heavy wooden Board Piece of Timber, like a Fork, upon their Shoulders, and prick'd them forward with Goads, if they hung back; which Goads it did the Servants little to kick against; for they but prick'd so much the more, 'till their Backs were so full of Holes, that they look'd like Sieves; themselves were call'd *Hangmanly Sieves*. *W.* You have not reckon'd up yet all the Ways of punishing or tormenting amongst the *Romans*, unless be mistaken. *R.* No, no; sometimes they put such Cooks in the Little Ease. Parricides they put up in a Leathern Sack, together with a Serpent, an Ape, a Cock and a Dog, and threw them into the Sea. To draw out Confessions, they did put them to the Rack; and with hot Plates and Irons burnt and tore off their Flesh from their Sides. Sometimes, unless they were redeem'd by their Money, and sav'd (as we say Proverbially) from the Gallies, they were tumbled down the *Tarpeian Rock*, and their Necks broken; or else they were, by a Thrust into their Throats, dragg'd to the *Gemina* stairs, and there, having their Thighs first burnt to Death in a Coat dawl'd on the Fire with Pitch and Brimstone. *W.* But did they sometimes reserve Offenders to be punish'd in Ways as might afford them some Pleasure? *R.* They did so; and to that End they sometimes condemned them to the Fencing-School, and sometimes to the Beasts, to fight with them for their Lives. *W.* They not sometimes punish their Slaves with Labour? *R.* Yes, yes; sometimes they sent them to the Correction-House; sometimes they condemned them to the drawing of Water; or to the carrying of Stones, having Shackles about their Legs, to prevent their running away, and being branded with

H 3

fork y vain

160 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

a Brand burnt into their Hand, Brow, or Shoulder, that they might be known again if they did run whence they were call'd *Branded Slaves*, and *Stiz'd Rogues*. *W.* To punish severely, was the to have their Laws kept more duly; for nothing spoils a City than foolish Fity.

DIALOGUE XXV.

Ulpian.

Papinian.

(U.) DID the Roman Magistrates in their Jures proceed only according to Law? *P.* No, *Ulpian*, sometimes they judg'd according to Equity. *U.* Did they always administer Justice sitting on the Bench? *P.* Sometimes the a private Sessions. *U.* Did they always judge selves in Person? *P.* No, sometimes they jud Proxy. *U.* Whom might they cite into their Court? *P.* Such as were Offenders against the Laws, Actions taken out against them, or were Prose of Capital Offenders, or were Witnesses in Civil Cases. *U.* What if a Man's Case were good? *P.* they acquitted him. *U.* What if his Case were bad? *P.* Then he was cast in his Suit? *U.* I hope condemn'd no Man before they heard him speak himself. *P.* No, they were far from that kind of Injustice, nor did they permit, that any should under hand, circumvent, or oppress another with Judgment procur'd by Bribery, or Confederacy; he might be condemn'd being innocent. *U.* I have been an unworthy Thing for any Citizen, whether by Birth, or by Donation, or any, who had rendered his Name to the Magistrate, to go about any such Thing? *P.* And yet, as the World goes, such Things might be done, were it not free both to assemble the People, and to make Speeches to the People, to give Votes, by Word of Mouth, or in Tables of Votes, that Laws might be made to prevent such Things.

DIALOGUE XXVI.

Samuel.

Arthur

Think, *Arthur*, it was a Custom in Times of Victory, to present him that was Commander in the Army, with *Coronets of Gold*. *A. Yes*, it was so for some Time; but afterwards, instead of those Coronets, they presented them with Money. *S.* It should seem that after a Victory, Goods of the conquer'd were expos'd to publick

A. Yes, and others too; for I have read of a *Cæsar's Goods*, who yet was never conquer'd. I have read too of an Action, wherein a King, in his Purple, with his Scepter, and other Ornaments, was set to Sale. *A.* In such Cases

the Buyer had need take Care, that he buy not of what has no Power to sell. *S.* Yes, indeed, it is the Buyer upon it to look to that; but Goods, at Sale are free for any Man to buy, that would have had a Mind to buy them. *A.* And if any had a Mind to redeem the Goods, he might do so, that he did put in Bonds, and gave Security for the Matter. *S.* I should have no Mind to buy a Pig in a Poke. *A.* But I hope you will be willing to buy a Pig with a Pudding in the Belly

S. Yes, at the Price of a simple Pig, else I shall be a simple Fellow, and deserve to be begg'd Fool.

DIALOGUE XXVII.

Robert.

Andrew.

Suppose, *Andrew*, that there were several Ways and Forms by which the *Romans*, when they convey'd their Estates to others after them. *S.* *Robert*, some they made Heirs, and some they made Legatees; and their Wills they sometimes put in Writing, in an Assembly of the People; and in Times of Peace: Sometimes by Will

162 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

Mouth, in the Presence of three or four Soldiers' namely, in Time of War, and most particularly when they were ready to give Battle. *R.* Did they always directly give their Estates to them whom they intended their Heirs? *A.* No: Sometimes they made them over to an Heir in Trust, who should after resign them to the true and lawful Heir. *R.* Did they always make one certain Person sole Heir to the whole Estate? *A.* No, no: They did sometimes make several Persons Heirs to some Part of their Estates, as themselves pleas'd; one perhaps to e'even Parts of his Goods, another to one Quarter of his Goods, a third to the four and twentieth Part, and a fourth had the three-score and twelfth Part. *R.* But might they give away what Proportion of their Estates they pleas'd in Legacies? *A.* I cannot tell that; but there was a Law made, whereby it was unlawful for any to give away in Way of Legacy unto any, except to the Kinsman of him which manumis'd him, or some other Persons, above fifty Shillings. *R.* Tho' it seem reasonable that every Man should do with his own what he pleaseth, yet it is not fit his Heir should be wrong'd over much.

D I A L O G U E XXVIII.

Hottoman.

Paul:

H. **W**ERE the Judges always amongst the *Romans* chosen by Vote? *P.* No: Sometimes they chose them by Lot. *H.* Did they allow of it, when a Man enter'd an Action against any, to forge a Crime against him never committed by him? *P.* By no means: On the Contrary rather, they ordain'd, that whosoever should forge an Accusation against another, should be burnt in his Forehead, in Token of Infamy. Nay, (so much they lov'd plain and down-right Dealings) they thought not well of him who should either play the false Proctor, or so much as desist in his Accusation. *H.* What if a Man, being *called into a Court*, to answer indirect Means us'd in

in the attaining of an Office, did plead Sickneſs for his not appearing? *P.* He underwent a penalty. *H.* Whether a Man were fin'd in any Sum of Money, or borrow'd Money upon Bargain, or upon Uſe, how came he diſcharg'd of his Deb? *P.* By paying what he was fin'd or had promis'd, and repaying what he had borrow'd, and that either in coin'd Money, or in Bullion; the firſt by numbering it, the ſecond by weighing it. *H.* But what if a Man had not ready Money to pay? *P.* He might ſecure it to his Creditor by mortgaging of Land to pay it, if his Creditor would take Land for Security. *H.* I ſuppoſe there was none, who put Money to Uſe, but would be willing to that. *P.* I cannot tell. A Man may be cheat'd even that as well as any other Way, if he deals with a Knave, as they, who do put Money to Uſe, do find by very frequent Experience.

D I A L O G U E XXIX.

Francis.

Valentine.

F. **T**HE more, *Valentine*, that I conſider the Practices of the *Romans*, the more Equity I ſtill find in their Judiciary Proceedings. *V.* I am of your Mind, *Francis*; for what can be more equal, than after Citation of any one in the Court, and both Parties had their Appearance in the Court, before they did produce Witneſſes, Sureties ſhould be put in, by the Defendant, to pay his Fine, and by the Plaintiff, to ſtand to the Verdict of the Court; and by both, that, unleſs they did make an End betwixt themſelves, the Party caſt in the Suit, when the Charges of the Suit were tax'd, ſhould defray them. *F.* And it was very equal, was it not, that when one was accus'd of a Crime, the Judge, that ſate upon Life and Death, ſhould put the Accuſer to it to ſwear, that he did not accuſe maliciously? *V.* Yes, it was ſo; as alſo that when any did implead another, and enter an Action againſt him, and he had demanded Sureties of him for Appearance, he ſhould

H 5

accord.

164 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

accordingly enter into Bond for his Appearance. *F.* But most equal it was, that, if the Case were dubious, so that there were need of longer Time to consider, before Execution to seize on a Man's Goods were granted out, the Prisoner should be repiev'd, and Sentence put off 'till the third Day. *V.* So it was; and where there was such Caution in proceeding, and such Equity in judging, none need'd to fear, upon good Cause, to offer to wage a Suit in Law with any; nor any to wager a Suit in Law with another, or to come to it, and in open Court argue the Case *pro* and *con*; or to bind himself either to stand to the Judgment of the Court, or to pay what he should be adjudg'd. *F.* I wish there was the like Equity in all Courts. *V.* You may wish it; but you shall never find it.

DIALOGUE XXX.

Henry.

Urian.

H. I Prithee, *Urian*, give me some Account of the Customs of the *Romans* in making Peace or War. *U.* I will do it, *Harry*, with all my Heart, if you have Leisure to hear me. First then, when they made a Truce, a Herald took a Stone in his Hand, and in the Name of the State, took a solemn Oath, that he did deal sincerely in the making of that League; and then he did cast the Stone out of his Hand, wishing that himself might perish. and be cast out of all he had, if he dealt fallaciously, as that Stone was cast out of his Hands. *H.* But what did they do, when a League could not be made, but they must needs come to a Battle? *U.* When the Captain had sounded a Call, and the Soldiers, who serv'd under that Captain, had stood a while in Readiness, after that they had first made a great Shout for Battle, and had rest'd a while with their Armour, they did joyn Battle. *H.* I pray you, what Ceremony was us'd, when they were to remove their Camp? *U.* They did give a great Shout in Token that the Soldiers should truss up their Bag and Bag-

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 165

gaze, and then they march'd away readily, *H.* Were any excus'd from serving in the Wars? *U.* Yes, old Soldiers discharg'd of their Service, as having serv'd out their Time in the Wars, unless the Lord General call'd them forth again in Case of great Need, when the Business was not so fit to be trusted to the Skill, or Valour of fresh-water Soldiers, but was to be manag'd by old beaten Soldiers, who would not keep out of Danger as far as they could, but fight it out stoutly, 'till it came to the last Push. *H.* It were not indeed to be expected, that Men, in their initiation into War, should so gallantly behave themselves, as those, who by long Experience had been inur'd thereunto. But I am afraid, that by my skipping thus from one thing to another, I quite tire you, therefore I will give over. *U.* You are very welcome to ask what you please, and discourse as long as you please. And I am ready to serve you in any Thing within my Skill and Power.

DIALOGUE XXXI.

Theodore.

Benjamin.

T. A Prince, when his great Friend had deceiv'd him, was sometimes forc'd, for Want of Succour, to shut up himself for Security in a wall'd Town: What Course did the *Romans* then take for the conquering of that Place? *B.* Sometimes they assail'd it by open Force, environing it with a deep Ditch, and a Rampire; approaching the Walls under Muscles, and Target-Fences, and moveable Turrets; and battering it with Balists, Scorpions, and Rams; and sometimes by Covert-Ways, working under Ground, 'till they had digg'd through the Walls and got into the Towns; and sometimes, when neither Force nor Cunning could prevail, they tir'd out the Citizens with the Troubles of a long Siege, or pin'd them out with want of Provisions. *T.* In the mean Time they put themselves to great Charges to carry on the War. *B.* Yes sure: He that could cast up the Accompt of their Charges with the Pen, would undertake a hard Task.

168 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

tors themselves, with the best of the *Romans*; after which he did hang up his Royal Spoils in a Temple consecrated to *Jupiter Feretrius*. Fourthly, They did to his Honour erect Trophies of Brass or Marble, with Inscriptions upon them to perpetuate the Honour of his Victory; and sometimes Statues, and Columns, and triumphal Arches. R. These were noble Rewards indeed, enough to stir up active Spirits to brave Achievements; but what had the Soldiers? L. They were honourably rewarded also; for sometimes they had Offices bestow'd on them, as the Place of *Censor*, *Prefect*, or *Decurio*; sometimes their Pay was increas'd; sometimes the Spoils taken in War were shar'd among them; and sometimes they receiv'd military Gifts of several Sorts according to their Deserts. R. I pray you what were they? L. In former Ages they receiv'd a certain Measure of Corn call'd *Adorea*; afterwards they were honour'd with Bracelets for the Hand wrist, Chains to wear about their Necks, Horse-Trappings, a Spear without any Iron at the End of it, and Crowns of several Sorts. R. What, I pray you, were those several Sorts of Crowns? L. First, not to mention the triumphal Crown of Gold sent by the Senate to the Lord General in Honour of his Triumph; nor the Oval-Crown made of Myrtle-tree, and worn by him at his Ovation; nor the Obsidional-Crown made of Grass, (thence call'd the *Grassie Crown*) and given by the Soldiers to the Lord-General, when they were freed from a Siege: To that Soldier who had sav'd a Citizen's Life, there was given a *Civic-Crown*; to him who first scal'd the Enemies Walls, there was presented a *Mural-Crown*, representing the Battlements of a Wall; on him who first enter'd the Enemies Tents, was bestow'd a *Camp Crown*, bearing the Resemblance of a Bulwark, and thence call'd the *Bulwark Crown*; he who first enter'd the Enemies Ship, was honour'd with a *Naval-Crown*, portray'd with many Ship-beaks, and thence call'd the *Beaken-Crown*. R. But was the Civic-Crown bestow'd only upon Soldiers? L. At first it was so; but afterwards it was also bestow'd on the Lord-Ge-
neral,

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 169

al, if he fear'd a *Roman* Citizen, when he had
wer to kill him R. Let me trouble you but with
e Question or two more, and then I shall have done
u ling of you. L. Ask what you please, and wel-
ne. R. I observe, that in *Races*, and the like Ma-
ries, he that was overcome, did gather some of the
ass of the Place, and give it unto the Conqueror,
an Acknowledgment of his being conquer'd: In
at Custom of the *Romans* was that Action founded?
In this, that the Soldiers freed from a Siege, by
esenting to the General a Crown made of Grass,
owing in the Place where they were besieg'd, did
ereby yield up unto him their Right in that Place.
nd thence came it to pass, that he that would con-
s himself worsted in any Contest, did make his
nfession in this Form of Words, *I give you Grass*.
I thank you for all this Trouble, and am your
lig'd Servant. L. I am glad I have been able to serve
u in any Thing. Farewel.

C H A P. VII.

Of the Variation of Phrases.

TO enable the Scholar the better to make Use of
his Phrases, as also to enrich him with the
reatest Store of them, Variation of the Phrases will
very conducing. Of this therefore let the Teacher
st give him some Rules, and then put him upon the
actice.

For Rules, he may furnish him with them accord-
g to his Discretion, out of his own Observation;
, if he think good, he may make Use of this Col-
tion.

Rules of Variation.

I A Verb Active may be vary'd by a Verb Pas-
e, by putting the Nominative Case of the Active
erb into the Ablative, with *a* or *ab*; and the Accu-
tive into the Nominative, making the Verb agree
with

170 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

with it in Number and Person : as, *Ego lego Virgilium, Virgilius legitur a me*

Sometimes the Nominative before the Verb Active may be the Dative after the Passive : as, *Non me ullus intelligit, Non intelligor ulli. Id vitium nullus notaverat, Id vitium nulli notatum erat.* But this is most us'd in Poets.

If the Verb Active govern a Dative Case of the Person, then it will not be convenient to vary the Nominative Case before it, by a Dative Case after the Verb Passive ; because then there will be two Datives together ; and therefore we vary not *Referam tibi gratiam* by *Referetur mihi gratia*, but by *Referetur tibi a me gratia.*

The Dative Case after *videor* [I seem] is not variable by an Ablative Case with a Preposition. *Vide Vos. Lat. Gram. p. 51.*

II. A Verb Passive may be vary'd, by putting the Nominative Case into the Accusative, and the Dative or Ablative into the Nominative, and making the Verb agree with it in Number and Person : as, *Viris bonis honesta petuntur, Viri boni honesta petunt. Ille ab his laudatur. Illi illum laudant. Ab hostibus constanter pugnatur, Hostes constanter pugnant. Occurritur nobis a doctis, Docti nobis occurrunt.*

III. The Ablative Case absolute may be vary'd by putting the Ablative into the Nominative, and turning the Participle into a Verb, with some of these Particles, *dum, cum, quando, si*, in such Moods as the Particle us'd therewith requires : as, *Rege veniente hostes fugerunt, Dum venierat rex hostes fugerunt. Imperante Augusto natus est Christus, Cum imperebat Augustus natus est Christus. Superbo regnante in Italiam venit, Quando Superbus regnabat in Italiam venit.*

Note, If there be no Participle expressed together with the Ablative Case absolute, then the Participle *ente* or *existente* is understood, and the Variation will be made by *sum, fui, &c.* As, *Me [existente] dux vinces, Si ego dux fuero vinces. Credo pudicitiam Saturno rege moratam in terris, Credo pudicitiam quando Saturnus rex erat moratam in terris.*

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 171

IV. The Nominative Case, with his Verb and Participle may be vary'd, by the turning the Nominative into the Ablative, and (the Particle being put away) the Verb into a Participle agreeing with it:

Postquam arbor dejicitur, Arbore dejectâ.

V. An Adjective that hath *res* express'd with it, may be vary'd by putting away *res*, and putting the Adjective into the Neuter Gender: as, *Deus res omnes* *nihilò creavit; Deus omnia ex nihilo creavit.*

VI. An Adjective of the Neuter Gender, whose Substantive is *res* understood, may be vary'd by expressing *res*, and putting the Adjective into the Gender agreeing with it: as, *Unum quodque suo designare nomine, Rem unam quodque suo designare nomine. Id foris difficile est, Forsan res ea difficilis est.*

VII. The latter of two Substantives being a Genitive Case of Possession, may be vary'd by an Adjective Possessive, agreeing in the Case with the former Substantive, and *vice versâ*: as, *Domus patris, Pater domus. Herilis filius, Filius heri. So, Mulier monstra, Monstrum mulieris. Scelus viri. Vir scelestus. Plaut. Treatise of Particles, c. 64. r. 1. n. 4.*

VIII. An Adjective absolute in the Neuter Gender in his Genitive Case, may be vary'd, by putting the Substantive of the Genitive Case into the Case of the Adjective, and the Adjective of the Neuter Gender into the Gender of the Substantive: as, *Hoc noctis, nocte. Per diversa terrarum distractus est. Per diversas distractus est.*

X. An Adjective with his Substantive wherewith he agrees in Case, may many Times be elegantly vary'd, by putting the Adjective into the Neuter Gender, (if it already be not) and the Substantive into the Genitive Case: as, *Ne eum quidem leporem habuerunt, Ne id quidem leporis habuerunt, Cic. Mihi hoc vitium dedere, Mihi hoc negotii dedere, Ter. Quis hic homo? Quid hoc hominis? Ter. Huic alia merces erit, Huic aliud mercedis erit, Virg. Per gentes terrasque dispersas volitabant, Per diversa gentium terrarumque volitant, Flor.*

X. The

172 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

X. The Accusative Case before the Infinitive Mood may be vary'd, by turning the Accusative into the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood into the Indicative or Subjunctive, with *quod* or *ut*, accordingly as those Particles require: as, *Te incolumem rediisse gaudeo*, *Quod tu redieris incolumis gaudeo*. *Te abire jubeo*, *Ut tu abeas jubeo*.

Note, The Infinitive Mood may not be resolv'd into another Mood with *quod* or *ut* indifferently; but sometimes by *quod*, sometimes by *ut*. See *Eng. Particles*, c. 75. 1. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8.

XI. The Nominative Case with his Verb having *quod* or *ut* with it, may be vary'd by putting away *quod* or *ut*, and turning the Nominative Case into the Accusative, and the Verb into the Infinitive Mood: as, *Quod tu bene vales gaudet*, *Te bene valere gaudeo*. *Ut tu fabulam agas volo*, *Te agere fabulam volo*.

XII. The Verb *habeo* may be vary'd by the Verb *sum*, by putting that Word into the Dative Case, which was the Nominative before *habeo*; and that into the Nominative which after *habeo* was the Accusative: as, *Ego habeo domi patrem*, *Est mihi domi pater*. *Non habeo ego argentum*, *Non est mihi argentum*.

XIII. The Genitive Case govern'd of a Noun Partitive may be vary'd by a Preposition, and such Case as he governs; and *vice versa*; as, *Quorum alter te scientiâ augere potest*. *E quibus alter te scientiâ augere potest*. *Major juvenum*, *De juvenibus major*, *Hor. Multa istarum arborum manu mea facta sunt*. *Ex arboribus istis multa manu mea facta sunt*. *Cic*

XIV. The Genitive Case after the Superlative Degree may be vary'd by *e*, *ex*, with an Ablative; or *inter* with an Accusative Case: as, *Virgilius doctissimus Poetarum*, *ex Poetis*, *inter Pictas*.

XV. The Infinitive Mood Active, after a Verb of Motion, or denoting any Intention, may be vary'd several Ways: For Instance, *Venio salutare Matrem* may be vary'd, 1. By the first Supine: as, *Venio salutatum matrem*. 2. By a Participle in *rus*: as, *Venio salutaturus matrem*. 3. By a Gerund in *di* with *ergo*,
gratia,

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 173

gratiâ, causâ : as, *Matrem salutandi causâ venio*. 4. By a Gerund in *dum* with a Proposition : as, *Venio ad salutandum matrem*. 5. By a Gerundive with *ergò, gratiâ, causâ* : as, *Matris salutanda gratiâ venio*. 6. By a Gerundive with a Proposition, as, *Ad matrem salutandam venio*. 7. By a Subjunctive Mood with *ut* : as, *Matrem ut salutem venio*.

Note, Every one of these Ways of varying may be vary'd by all, or the most of the other Ways : As the 1st Supine by the Infinitive Mood, Participle in *rus*, Gerund, Gerundive, Verb. So the Gerund in *rus* may be vary'd by the Infinitive Mood, first Supine, Gerund, Gerundive, Verb. So the Gerund in *dum* by the Infinitive Mood, first Supine, Participle in *rus*, Gerund in *di* with *Causâ*, &c. Gerundive with Proposition, Verb with *ut*. So Gerundive by Infinitive Mood &c. So Verb of Subjunctive Mood with *ut*, by Infinitive Mood, &c.

XVI. The Infinitive Mood Pass. after an Adjective, may be vary'd several Ways : For Instance, *Dignus est amari*, may be vary'd, 1. By the latter Supine : as, *Dignus est amatu*. 2. By a Verb of the Subjunctive Mood with *ut* : as, *Dignus est ut ametur*. Or *qui* : as, *Dignus est qui ametur, quem ames*. 3. By a Noun of a cognate Original and Signification : as, *Dignus est amare*.

Note, Every one of these Ways of varying may be vary'd by the other. The Supine by the Infinitive Mood, the Subjunctive Mood with his Particles, and the Noun. The Subjunctive, with his Particle, by the Infinitive Mood and the Supine. And the Noun by the other Ways of varying before mention'd.

Note also, That the using of the Infinitive Mood after the Adjective, is Poetical or Historical.

XVII. The Comparative Degree may be vary'd, 1. By his Positive, with *magis* and *quam* : as, *Vilius argentum est auro, magis vile est argentum quam aurum*.

2. By his positive, with Comparative Particles, *tam, æque, adeo, ita, sic* perinde, answer'd by *quam, ac, atque, ut*, having some negative Particle before the former of them, after these Examples :

[Virtus

174 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

[*Virtus est aure pretiosum.*]

Aurum non tam est pretiosum, quam virtus.

Aurum non tam est pretiosum, ut virtus.

Aurum non æquè est pretiosum, ac virtus.

Aurum non æque est pretiosum, atque virtus.

Aurum non adeo est pretiosum, ut virtus.

Aurum non ita est pretiosum, ut virtus.

Aurum non perinde est pretiosum, ac virtus.

Aurum non perinde est pretiosum, quàm virtus.

Aurum non perinde est pretiosum, us virtus.

Aurum non sic pretiosum est, ut virtus.

So *Aurum* haud tam [*æquè, adeo, ita, sic, pe* est pretiosum, quàm [*ac, atque, ut*] *virtus*.

XVIII. The Superlative Degree may be vary'd

(1.) By his Comparative Degree: as, *Plato er omnium elegantissimus*, is variable.

1. Affirmatively.

Plato vir erat ceteris [aliis] omnibus elegantior, to vir erat, quàm ceteri omnes elegantior.

2. Negative y.

Plato vir erat, quo non altius [alter] elegantior. erat quisquam [ullus] Platone elegantior. Nmo erat one [quam Plato] elegantior. Nihil [haud quicq erat Platone elegantius.

3. Interrogatively.

Quis Platone erat elegantior? Quid erat Platone erius?

(2.) By his Positive, with Comparative Par tam, perinde, æquè, adeo, ita, sic, answer'd by at, atque, ut.

1. Negatively.

Nemo erat tam elegans, quam [ut] Plato. Ne rinde erat elegans, ac [atque, ut,] Plato. Hanc quisquam æquè elegans quam, [ac, atque, ut,] Haud erat quisquam adeo elegans, ut Plato. Nec [ita] erat elegans, ut Plato.

2. Interrogatively.

Quis tam [perinde, æquè, adeo, sic, ita] erat gans, quam [ac, atque, ut,] Plato.

(3.) By his conjugate Substantive: as,

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 175

Summa erat Platonis elegantia. Plato elegantia omnes vicit [prestitit, superavit] Platonem elegantia superavit nemo. Plato erat à nemine elegantia superatus. Quem non elegantia superavit Plato? Plato nulli elegantia cessit [secundus erat.] Platoni quis non elegantia cessit? Plato erat omnibus superior. Plato erat nulli inferior. O singularem Platonis elegantiam! O, quanta erat Platonis elegantia! Quem cum Platone possis elegantia aquare? Plato pene ipsa erat elegantia. Plato elegantia omnes erat antistes [exemplum, idea.] Platonis erat incredibilis elegantia.

XIX. Single Words may be vary'd several Ways,

1. By their own several Cases, and that,

(1.) Without any Variation of the whole Sentence, according to several Grammar-Ru'es in Part already touch'd upon, and yet farther observable by the heeding Reader.

Est ubi in Dativum vertitur, &c.

Opus autem adjectivè, &c.

Communis, alienus, &c.

Magnitudinis mensura, &c.

Nomina diversi atis, &c.

Infinitum quoque utrinque, &c.

Vertitur hic Genitivus, &c.

Æstimo vel Genitivum, &c.

At misereor & miseresco, &c.

Reminiscor, obliviscor, &c.

Potio aut Genitivo, &c.

Ex his quaedam efferuntur, &c.

Verba comparandi, &c.

Hæc variam habent, &c.

Dicimus, tempore, moderor tibi, &c.

At ex his quaedam cum aliis casibus, &c.

Laus & vituperium, &c.

Quaedam ex his quæ similitudinem, &c.

Natus, commodus, &c.

Adjectiva quæ ad copiam, &c.

Horum nonnulla, &c.

Pauca ex his mutant, &c.

Hanc Accusativum mutant, &c.

Rigandi verba interdum, &c.

Vestiendi verba interdum, &c.

Valeo etiam interdum, &c.

Ex quibus quaedam, &c.

Vertitur hic Ablativus, &c.

Verbis quibusdam additur, &c.

Passivis additur Ablat. &c.

Poeticè Infinitivus Modus, &c.

Vertuntur Gerundii voces, &c.

Quæ signific. partem temporis, &c.

Dicimus etiam in paucis, &c.

(2.)

176 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

(2) With some light Variation of the whole Sentence: as, *Sapientia rerum omnium præstantissima est. Sapientia præ rebus summa est præstantia. Sapientia non omnes præterea in universo res præstant. [Sapientiam] non omnes præterea in universo res præstant. O Sapientia! quænam è rebus omnibus æquè ac tu præstans, est? Sapientia! inter omnes usquam in orbe toto res nihil est præstantius*

2. By their Synonyma's: as, *Ensis, gladius. Amo, diligo. Sæpe, frequenter.*

3. By their Equipollents: as, *nullus, non ullus; Aliquis, non nemo; aliquando, non numquam; raro, non sæpe; doctus, non indoctus; bonus, minimè malus.*

4. By their Periphrases: as, *Philosophus, Vir sapientie studiosus. Ovidius, Sulmonensis Vates. Occidere, Vitâ privare. Rhetorica, Ars ornatè dicendi.*

5. By an Euallage.

(1.) Of a Noun.

1. For a Verb: as, *Jud'cent alii, Aliorum esto judicium.*

2. For a Particle: as, *Hoc te impellente fecit, Hoc tuo impulsu fecit.*

3. For an Adverb: as, *Lætè istuc audio, Lætus istuc audic.*

(2.) Of a Verb for a Noun: as, *Scientia tua nihil est, Scire tuum nihil est.*

(3.) Of a Particle for a Verb: as, *Consuli opus est, Consulto opus est.*

(4.) Of an Infinitive Mood for the Indicative: as, *Ex illo fluebant res Danaum, Ex illo fluere res Danaum.*

(5.) Of a Present Tense for a Preterimperfect Tense: as, *Tu si hic esses aliter sentire, Tu si hic sis aliter sentias*

(6.) Of the Plural Number for the Singular: as, *Ego populo imposui, Nos populo imposuimus.*

(7.) Of the Second Person for the Third, with his Nominative Case: as, *Qui unum nōrit, omnes nōrit, Unum nōris, omnes nōris.*

(8.) By Tropes of Rhetorick.

1. A Metonymy of the Efficient : as, *Eos Belli vis perculit, Eos Martis vis perculit.* Or of the Subject : as, *Sunt Itali testes, Testis est Italia.* Or of the Adjunct : as, *Cedat paci bellum, Cedant arma toga.*

2. An Irony of the contrary : as, *Vir malè, rem negligenter gessisti, Bone vir, curasti probe.*

3. A Metaphor : as *Omnes excitantur ad studia gloria, Omnes incenduntur ad studia gloria*

4. A Synecdoche of the Member : as, *In magno periculo eram, quod eadem urbe contineremur, In magno periculo eram, quod iisdem manibus contineremur.* —

Or of the Whole : as, *Imperium Romanum ardit bello, Orbis terrarum ardit bello.* Or of the Species : as, *Interfector civium interficitur, Parricida civium interficitur. Orator eloquentissimus, Alter Cicero* Or of the Genus : as, *Perdidimus Catilinam, Perdidimus hominem. Venientibus malis obstat Fortitudo, Veniantibus malis obstat Virtus.*

XX Sentences may be also vary'd by several Ways.

1. By turning the Affirmative Speech into a Negative, and contrariwise, a Negative into an Affirmative : as,

(1.) *Avaritia vitiorum omnium est teterrimum.*

Nullum est vitium tetrius quam avaritia.

Non vulgaris est viri prudentia.

(2.) *Non parva est peccandi maxima est illecebra.*

Impunitas peccandi maxima est illecebra.

Nihil meum est, quod auferri non potest.

2. By turning the Assertive Speech into an Interrogative, and contrariwise Interrogative into Assertive : as,

(1.) *Avaritia vitium est fœdissimum.*

Quod vitium fœdus est avaritia?

Nihil est absurdius, quàm, quò minus via restat, eo plus viatici querere.

Potest quicquam esse absurdius, quam quo minus —

Acerba audire tolerabilius est, quam videre?

Annon est tolerabilius acerba audire, quam videre?

(2.) *Annon sunt incerti bellorum omnium exitus?*

Omnium bellorum exitus incerti sunt.

Id ne appellandum est onus, quod cum lætitiâ feras?

Onus

178 The Art of Teaching improv'd,

Omnis non est appellandum, quod cum Letitiis feras?

3. By turning Assertive Speeches into Admirative and contrariwise Admirative into Assertive Speeches,

(1.) *Omnia sunt omnia in bellis civilibus.*

Quam misera sunt omnia in civilibus!

(2.) *Quam times quorsum evadas!*

Quorsum evadas magnopere timeo.

4. By turning Assertive Speeches into Exclamatory, and contrariwise Exclamatory into Assertive Speeches: as,

(1.) *Homo est admiranda scientia:*

O admirandam hominis scientia!

(2.) *O fortunatos nimium agricolas, si —*

Fortunati nimium forent agricolæ, si —

The better to enable him to make Use of the Rules, and perform his Variation in Latin, it be convenient to begin his Variation of Phrase English, rendering one English into another of same Sense in other Words. For Instance:

In Affirmative Speeches.

I affect thee very much. I love thee very much. art very much belov'd of me. I have a very great Affection for thee. I have a very great Love for thee. My Affection to thee is very great. My Affection towards thee is great. My Love is very much set on thee. Thou art far in my Favour. O how I love thee! What an Affection have I for thee.

In Negative Speeches.

It was not long of me that you were beaten. It came through me that you were beaten. It was not through me that you were beaten. It was not because of me that you were beaten. It was not my Fault that you were beaten. It was no Fault of mine that you were beaten. I am not to be blam'd for your being beaten. I was not the Cause of your beating. I was not the Cause of your being beaten. I did not cause you to be beaten. I did not cause your beating. Your beating was not caus'd by me. Your beating came not by the means of me. Your beating came through my means. I occasion'd it not, — or, I had no Occasion of your beating. Did I occasion your beating? Was I any Cause of your beating?

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 179

In the Interrogative Speeches.

What a Clock is it? How goes the Clock? How goes the Day? What Time of the Day is it? How spends the Day? What Hour of the Day is it?

In Epiphonematical Speeches.

Such Truth is there in that old Saying. Such Truth there is in what was said of old. So much Truth there is in that old Saying. So true is that old Saying. So true is that which was said of old. So truly was it said of old. So truly did they of old say. That Truth there is in that old Saying. With that Truth was it said by them of old?

And once for all; if any desire any farther Insight into this moost profitable Exercise, he may consult Mr. Clark's *Dux Oratorius*, written chiefly on that Subject; where n, besides Rules of Variation, there are almost infinite of vary'd Examples: *Erasmus's Colloquies*, p. 82. and Edit. *Londini* 631. *Buchler's Elegancies*, p. 111. Dr. *Robinson's Phrases*, in the End; and the most accomplish'd *Comenius's Artis Oratorie sive Grammatica Elegantis*, c. 5. which most choice Piece I owe to the Kindness of the worthy Mr. Henry Edminson, then one of the Masters in the School of Tunbridge, and do recommend to the Perusa' of all young, both Teachers and Learners. And thus much for Rules.

Now for Practice] The usual Way, I presume, is to give the Learner Sentences of several Forms, and put him to the varying of them: I condemn it not; it hath its Use and its Profit. But the Practice that I would recommend, should be upon his daily Lessons; the Master first, by a Line drawn underneath, denoting to him what Words and Phrases are capable of such Variations as he hath Rules for, and then causing him to vary those Words and Phrases according to his Rules, still informing and helping him in what he fails, thro' Want of Memory or Understanding. After he is a little experienc'd, he is to be put to find out of himself what Words or Phrases in his Lesson are variable, and accordingly to vary them. This Exercise, with a competent Understanding, will in a short Space produce a strange Alteration

tion to the better in all the Latins of the Scholar. This may be done on the Repetition-Day; but the sooner the better. *Expe tū crede.*

C H A P. VIII.

Of the Elegancies of the Particles.

A Fresh Variety of choice Phrases goes far in the Elegancy of a Latin Exercise; but nothing better sets it off than the Interweavings of the Particles. These like those Gold and Silver Filings, wherewith *Bassianus* strew'd the Roman lavements, make a Latin smooth and radiant; or, as those upper Constellations do the Firmament, they bespangle an Oration, rendering it illustrious and glorious. One shall oft be ravish'd with Admiration at the Delicacy of a *Ciceronian* Period; and yet, when all comes to all, not be able to say, what more charm'd, and took his Fancy, than the orient Sparklings of some interwoven elegant particles. This hath drawn so many Persons of excellent Learning, not only to take especial Notice, but write particular Treats of the Elegancies of these. Not to insist on what *Robertus Stephanus* hath done in his *Thesaurus Lingue Latine*; or *Laurentius Valla* in his *Elegancies*; or *Johannes Buchlerus* in his *Elegancies*; or *Jacobus Omphalius* in his *Elocutionis Imitatio & Apparatus*; or *Hardianus Cardinalis* in his *de Modis Latine loquendi*; or *Franciscus Sylvius* in his *Progymnasmatum*; or *Edmundus Richerius* in his *Rhetorick*: *Godeschalus Stewichius*, *Horatius Turselinus*, *Adamus Durrenus*, and *Philippus Pareus*, have all written just Treats, particular of these. A Competency therefore of Knowledge of the Elegancies of the Particles, and of Skill to use them elegantly, cannot but be yielded by Reason, and by Experience will be found to be hugely conducing to the rendering of the Learner's Latin elegant. With this Knowledge and Skill I advise the Teacher by all Ways

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 181

Ways and Means, upon all Occasions, to furnish his Scholars, what he may. And every Lecture, every Exercise, will afford him Matter for Observation. But the ready Way, I conceive, is to furnish him with, and at convenient Times read to him, some one or two Tracts of the Particles, both of the *English* and *Latin* Tongue. For *English*, though I may not commend, yet I may mention my own *Treatise* on that Subject; and for *Latin* I recommend unto him *Horatius Tarselinus*; or rather, as being later and better, *Philippus Pererus de Particulis Latinae Orationis*, which I wish was as common as it is good. And if the Reading of these whole *Authors* seem too laborious, and be like to take up too much Time (though no Time almost can too much be spent in so elegant a Study) the Teacher may, out of them, and his own Observation, make a short Collection, and give to his Scholar for his Use. And 'till he shall have made a better of his own, he may use this following.

Some Particles are elegantly us'd for other Words, and some are elegantly us'd with other Words. I shall first speak of those that are elegantly us'd for others. And of these some are more elegant, where other Expressions either are not elegant, or not so elegant; and some are elegantly used for others, which also may in the same Sense be us'd, almost, if not all out, as elegantly as they. I begin with the former.

Of Particles said to be more elegantly us'd, where other Expressions are not so elegant, if they be not, as sometimes they are very unelegant.

Rather say, *ad verbum*, than *de verbo ad verbum*: as, *Tabellas Latinas ad verbum de Græcis expressus*. Cic. 1. de Fin.

Rather say, *aliquando*, than *uno tempore aut altero*: as, *Itauescet aliquando dies, cum tu*—Cic.

Rather repeat *alius* in divers Cases, than say *unus uno*, or *aliqui uno*, *alii alio modo*: as, *Alius alio dicendi genere gaudet. Aliis alius vivendi mos est*. So repeat *aliud*, or *aliter*, rather than say *aliud*, or *aliter quædam*: as, *Aliud dicis, aliud cogitas. Aliter dicit, aliter facit*.

182 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

Rather say, *alius ex alio* than *unus post alium*: as, *Aliud ex alio me quotidie impedit* Cic.

Rather say, *quis quid*, than *quis aliquid*: as *Si quis quid reddat, Magna habenda est gratia* Ter. *At vero gravitate morborum, & cruciatu dolorum, si quis quem levet, magnam ineat gratiam* Cic. de Fin. l. 9. 'Ho' *quis* is us'd with *aliquid*: as, *Si quis aliquid ex sua re atque ex suo sermone dixerit*. Cic. 2. Div. 40. *Si quis semel aliquid dixerit*. Id. ib. 52. And so *aliquis* is repeated with itself: *Us in hoc quoque mundo nostro aliquid alicui par sit*. Cic. Att. 4. 17. So rather say, *quo quis*, than, *quo aliquis*: as, *quo enim quis versutior & callidior est, hoc inuisior & suspectior detracti opinione probitatis*. Cic. So rather say, *cum quis*, than, *cum aliquis*: as, *Cum quis invitus laborem suscepit, tum sentit graviores*. So immediately after *ne*, *num*, *nisi*, *sen*, *sive*, use *quis* rather than *aliquis*: as, *Ne quam patiar injuriam, opera mihi danda est. Num quas mihi offers literas? Nisi qua me forse fugiunt*. Cic. *Nisi quid aliud vobis placet*. Cic. *Si verum est Fabium Labionem, seu quem alium id tenuisse*. Cic.

And lastly, after *sine* rather use *ullus*, *quispiam*, or *quisquam*, than *aliquis*: as, *Sine cujuspiam opera; sine cujusquam auxilio; sine ulla pecunia*.

Rather say, *unus aut alter*, than *unus vel duo*: as, *Quis tantum est in uno, aut altero die?* Cic.

Note. Yet Cicero said, *Horam unam, aut duas eodem loco armatos retinere*. Pro Dejot.

Rather say, *etiam num*, or *etiam nunc*, than *usque nunc*: as, *Queritur etiam num quis eum nunciam miserit*. Cic. *Etiam nunc hic stas, Parmenio?* Ter. So rather say, *etiam tum*, than *usque tunc*: as, *Cum etiam tum in lecto Crassus esset*. Cic.

Rather say, *hinc & illinc*, than *hinc & inde*: as, *Hinc & illinc exhibent mihi negotium*. Plaut.

Rather use *indies*, or *in horas*, after a Comparative Degree, than *magis*, ac *magis*: as, *Fit doctior indies*.

Rather say, *maximè omnium*, than *plus quam omnes*: as, *Qui maximè omnium nobilium Græcis literis studuit*. Cic. So rather say, *minimè omnium*, than *minimus*.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 183

quàm omnes : as, *Quod quidem tu minime, omnium ignoras* Cic.

Rather say, *minimum*, than *ut minimum*, or *ad minus* : as, *Ita sunt omnes partes minimum octoginta unæ.* Cic.

Rather say, *non ita pridem*, than *non multo tempore ante* : as, *Nostra autem civitate non ita pridem dominatæ regio liberata* Cic.

Rather say, *non idem tibi & mihi* than *non idem tibi si ut mihi* : as, *Non eadem vobis & illis necessitudo impendet* Sal.

To express a little Time, rather say, *parumper*, or *paulisper*, than *parum*, or *paulum* : as *Dum exiero, parumper opprime hic.* Ter. *Paulisper, dum se uxor, ut fit comparat, moratus est.* Cic.

Rather say, *per hos dies, annos*, than *durantibus his diebus, annis* : as, *Nulla abs te per hos dies epistola inanis aliqua re utili & suavi venerat.* Cic. *Quam provinciam tenuistis à prædonibus liberam per hosce annos?* Cic.

Rather say, *pridie quàm*, than *pridie quo* : as, *Pridie quam excessit è vi.* A Cic. So use *quàm*, not *quo*, after *postridie* : as, *postridie intellexi, quàm à vobis discessi.* Cic.

Rather say, *præ*, or *præ ut*, than *in comparatione* : as, *Hic ego illum contempsi præ me.* Ter. *Parum etiam, præ ut futurum est prædicat.* Plaut.

Rather say, *pro virili parte*, than *quantum unus vir potest* : as, *Hæc qui pro sua virili parte defendunt.*

After a Verb of doubting, rather say, *quàm* than *quod non* : as, *Quod si accideret, non dubitas, quin brevi Troja sit peritura* Cic

Rather say, *quoties* than *quot vicibus* : as, *Quoties tibi extorta est fides ista de manibus.*

Rather say, *ut quisque*, than *secundum quod quisque* : as, *Ut quisque est vir optimus, ita difficillime alios esse improbos suspicatur.* Cic

Rather say, *semel & iterum*, than *semel & bis* : as, *Ut re semel atque iterum præjudicata condemnatus in iudicium venerit.* Cic.

Rather say, *non temere est*, than *non sine causa quâ re est* : as, *Non temere est, quod tu tam times.* Ter.

184 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

Rather use *ultra*, than *ulterius*: as, *Si probabiliter dicentur, nè quid ultra requiratis.* Cic.

Rather say, *pauca diebus post*, or *pauca post diebus*, than *post pauca diebus*: as, *Pauca post diebus, quam Lucà discesserat.* Cic.

Rather say *uspian*, than *in aliquo loco*: as, *Inde utrum consistere uspian velit, an mare transire, nescit.* Cic.

And thus much of Particles elegantly us'd, where other Expressions are not elegant. I now proceed to the second Sort.

Of Particles elegantly us'd, where others also may be us'd elegantly.

A is elegantly us'd for *pro*: as, *Vide ne hoc totum, Scævola sit à me.* Cic. Also for *post*: as, *Quid antequam Veneri a jentaculo?* Plaut. Also for *contra*: as, *A quo periculo defenante, Judices, circum Fontem.* Cic.

Ad is elegantly us'd for *usque ad*: as, *Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragædias fecit.* Cic. *Inermes, ad satietatem trucidabitis.* Liv. *Quod iis ad denarium solveretur.* Cic. Also for *circiter* and *circa*: as, *Homines ad quindecim Carioni assenserunt.* Cic. *Ad qua tempora te expectem facias incertiores velim.* Cic. Also for *apud*: as, *Signa qua nobis curasti, ea sunt ad Caj tam expedita.* Cic. Also for *ante*: as, *Clodius abjecta toga se ad generi pedes abiecit.* Cic. Also for *secundum*: as, *Ad arbitrium & mutum auditorum totum se fingit & accomodat.* Cic. Also for *præ* in Comparison: as, *At nihil ad nostram hunc Ter.* Also for *post*: as, *Nescio quid intersit, utrum nunc veniam, an ad decem annos.* Cic. Also for *de*: as, *Postquam vos ad virtutem verba fecistis.* Symmach.

Adeo is elegantly put for *ita*, *tam*, or *tantum*: as, *Adeone hospes hujus urbis, adeo ignarus es, ut hæc nescias?* Cic. So *adeo* non is elegantly us'd for *tantum adest ut*: as, *Adeo ipse non violavit ut summam curam adhibuerit, ne quis captivo corpori illuderet.* Curt.

Adhuc is elegantly us'd for *præterea*: as, *Nisi si quid adhuc ferre vultis.* Cic.

Admodum

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 185

Admodum is elegantly us'd for *omnino* : as, *Curio litterarum admodum nihil sciebat.* Cic.

Alius is elegantly us'd for *diversus* : as, *Sed aliud quiddam longè aliud, Crassè, querimus.* Cic.

At is elegantly us'd for *saltem* : as, *Si mihi republica bona frui non licebit, at carebo mala.* Cic.

Certe is elegantly us'd for *saltem* : as, *Homines mortem optare incipiant, vel certè timere desinant.* Cic.

Citùs is elegantly us'd for *prius* : as, *Vox me citiùs defeceri, quàm nomina.* Cic.

Cum is elegantly us'd for *etsi* : as, *Cum plus etiam contenderimus, quàm possimus, minus tamen faciemus, quàm debemus.* Cic.

De is elegantly put for *in* or *per* before Words of Time : as, *In comitium de nocte venit.* Cic. Also for *super* : as, *Regulus de captivis commutandis Roman misissus.* Cic. Also for *ob* or *propter* : as, *Flebat uterque non de suo supplicio ; sed pater de filii morte, de patris filius.* Cic. Also for *quod attinet* : as, *De pace, sentio simulationem esse apertam.* Cic. Also for *secundum* : as, *De amicorum sententiâ Reffius Romam confugit.* Cic. Also for *pro* : as, *De imperio d certare.* Cic.

Deinceps is elegantly put for *deinde* : as, *De justitiâ dictum est ; deinceps, ut erat propositum de libertate dicendum.* Cic.

Ea re is elegantly us'd for *propterea* : as, *Is metuit, & ea re fugit.* Cic. *Et ea re id sequor.* Cic.

Eò is elegantly us'd for *ad id*, or *usque ad id* : as, *Eò relictæ res erant, ut nulla amplius spes esset.* Cic. Also for *ideo* : as, *Illi homi auram tue scis habere, eò me salutat blandiunt.* Plaut.

Ergo is elegantly us'd for *causa* : as, *Si quid contra illas leges ejus legis ergo factum sit.* Cic.

Ex is elegantly us'd for *secundum* : as, *Ex præceptis philosophiæ vita acta.* Cic. *Ut spero, statues ex dignitate nostra.* Cic. Also for *pst* : as, *Ex consulatu profectus est in Galliam.* Cic.

Extra is elegantly us'd for *præter* : as, *Extra ducem, paucosque præterea.* Cic.

186 The Art of Teaching improv'd,

Hoc, with *quo*, is elegantly us'd for *tanto quanto*, as, *Hoc audio libentius quo sapius*. Cic. *Quo difficilius, hoc præcarius*. Cic.

In is elegantly us'd for *inter*: as, *Hic in magnis viris non est habendus*. Cic.

Is with *qui* is elegantly us'd for *talis qualis*: as, *Itaque ego is in illum sum quem me esse vis*. Cic.

Id quod is elegantly us'd for *qua res*: as, *Secedant improbi, secernant se a bonis, unum in locum congregentur, muro denique, id quod sæpe jam dixi, secernantur a bonis*. Cic.

Iterum is elegantly put for *secundum*: as, *Fabule vix dignæ quæ iterum legantur*. Cic. *Iterum ac tertio nominati*. Cic.

Juxta is elegantly put for *secundum*: as, *Juxta eos in tua manu est* Tacit.

Licet is elegantly put for *etiam si*: as, *Licet corpus affecerit meum, dignitas jam in patriam redierat*. Cic.

Longe is elegantly put for *procul*: as *Isti nuntii quam longè sint nescio*. Cic. *Alto' for us'd*: as, *Longe mihi alia mens*. Sal.

Minus is elegantly us'd for *non*: as, *At nonnunquam quæ prædicta sunt minus convenient*. Cic.

Ne is elegantly us'd for *vere*: as, *Ne illi vehementer errant*. Cic.

Nec is elegantly us'd for *non*: as, *Quæ mortuo nec ita multo post in Galliam proficiscitur*. Cic. *Nec enim illa prima vera est* Cic.

Nihil is elegantly us'd for *non*: as, *Hæc tamen opus in apertum ut proferas nihil postulo*. Cic.

Nisi is elegantly us'd for *veruntamen*: as, *De re nihil possum judicare, nisi illud mihi persuades* Cic.

Nullus is elegantly us'd for *non*: as, *Memini tametsi nullus moneret*. Ter.

Nusquam is elegantly us'd for *nullo in loco*: as, *Ego vero nusquam esse illos puto*. Cic.

Ob is elegantly us'd for *ante*: as, *Mihi ob oculos exitium versatur*. Cic.

Omnino is elegantly us'd for *tantummodo* and *prorsus*: as, *Quin quæ omnino fuerunt, qui illum absolverunt*. Cic. *Epulabar cum sodalibus omnino medico*. Cic.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 187

Omnis is elegantly us'd for *totus* : as, *Es omni tempore Roma fui.* Cic.

Parum is elegantly us'd for *non satis* : as, *Duas dabo, una si parum est.* Plaut.

Per is elegantly us'd for *ob* : as, *Neque sciebat, neque per atatem etiam poterat.* Ter.

Perinde is elegantly us'd for *aque or ita* : as, *Philosophia non perinde, ac de hominum est vita mereta, laudatur.* Cic. *Quae perdifficilia sunt, perinde habenda sunt, ac si effici non possint.* Cic.

Prae is elegantly us'd for *ante* : as, *Stillantem praefugionem tulit.* Cic. Also for *ob* or *propter* : as, *Solem praesagittarum multitudine, non videbitis.* Cic.

Prater is elegantly us'd for *extra* : as, *Amicum sibi ex consularibus neminem esse video, prater Lucullum.* Cic. Also for *supra* : as, *Attici in eo genere prater ceteros excellunt.* Cic.

Praterquam is us'd for *nisi* : as, *Nullum a vobis praemium postulo, praterquam hujus diei memoriam sempiternam.* Cic.

Pro is us'd for *ante* : as, *Ille praefida, quae pro templis omnibus cernitis.* Cic. Also for *in* : as, *Laudati quoque pro concione omnes sunt.* Liv. Also for *vice* or *loco* : as, *Tibi Marcelli statua pro patibulo fuit.* Also for *secundum* : as, *Civitatibus pro numero militum pecunia summas describere.* Cic. Also for *ob* or *propter* : as, *Pro hujus peccatis ego supplicium sufferam.* Plaut.

Prope is us'd for *juxta* : as, *Cum plebs prope ripam Anienis consedisset.* Cic.

Propter is us'd for *prope* : as, *In pratulo propter Platonis statuum consedimus.* Cic. *Ipsae cum liberis & colonis propter Aquilam adsistit.* Sal.

Qua repeated, is elegantly us'd for *tam tum* : as, *Tupiarium laudavi, ita omnia convestivit hedera, quae basin villa, quae intercolumnia ambulationis.* Cic.

Quando is elegantly us'd for *quoniam* : as, *Quam quando complexus es, & senes.* Cic. So *quandoquidem* : as, *Quandoquidem tu istos oratores tantopere laudas.* Cic.

Quamvis is elegantly us'd for *quantumvis* : as, *Quamvis vero mihi difficile sit, quamvis multos nominatim proferre.* Cic.

88 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

Quasi is elegantly us'd for *tanquam* : as, *Sic eos nam, quasi ageatur res, non quasi narretur.* Cic. for *sicut*, or *non secus ac* : as, *Quasi tua res aut bonos er, ita laboras.* Cic. Also for *fere* : as, *Quantulubis videtur? mihi quasi pedalis.* Cic.

Qui is elegantly us'd for *ut* : as, *Nec tam sum lens, qui me Iovem esse dicam.* Cic. Also for *quas*, *Sed illum cum esse puto, qui esse debent.* Cic.

Quid is elegantly us'd for *cur* : as, *Sed quid ego mentor? quid plura disputo?* Cic.

Quis is elegantly us'd for *aliquis* : as, *Negat Nego. Ter. Ut si quis quem oculis privaverit, dicat.* Cic. *Ut, si quid cui simile esse possit.* Cic.

Quod is elegantly us'd for *quantum* : as, *Ipse commodo tuo fiat) cum eo colloquere.* Cic. Also *quantum id quod* : as, *Quod ad me scribis de Hermat miki gratissimum est.* Cic. Also for *quia* : as, *Qui beatior Epicurus, quod in patria vivebat; quam Merui, quod Athenis?* Cic.

Quo is elegantly us'd for *quanto* : as, *Sed quos suaviore, eo majorem dolorem ille casus afferebat.* Cic. *gratior tua liberalitas, C. Caesar, nobis qui illa via debet esse.* Cic. Also for *ut* : as, *Quo facilius pro illa Romani esse hominis, idcirco—* Cic.

Quomodo is elegantly us'd for *ut* or *sicut* : as, *Patio brevis, & quomodo mihi persuadeo, aliquanto a Cic.*

Quocirca is elegantly us'd for *quomobrem* : as, *circa bene apud majores nostros Senatus decrevit.* Cic.

Quippe is elegantly us'd for *utpote* : as, *Sol Den magnus, videtur, quippe homini erudito.* Cic. *Cum fratre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum nisi re veniret.* Cic.

Secundum is elegantly us'd for *pro* : as, *Secundum judicari volumus.* Cic.

Sic is elegantly us'd for *talis* (in Descriptions of ture and Manners) *Sic is vulgus, ex veritate pa opinione multa aestimat.* Cic. *Sic is ingentum. Testum, si placcio, utere.* Ter. *Qui sic sunt, haud n heredem adjuvans.* Ter.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 189

Si is elegantly us'd for *an*: as, *Dicito, si pascuntur aues.* Cic. Also for *etiam*: as, *Et mercede, si nihil diceris, tanto officio me moveret.* Cic.

Sin is elegantly put for *sed si*: as, *Si ita est, omnia faciliora; sin aliter, magnum est negotium.* Cic.

Sub is elegantly us'd for *paulo antes* as, *Sub exitu vite.* Suet. *Sub lucem.* Virg. Also for *paulo post*: as, *Sub equestri finem certaminis, coorta est pugna peditum.* Liv.

Super is elegantly us'd for *de*: as, *Simulque cogites, quid nobis agendum sit super legatione.* Cic.

Supra is elegantly us'd for *ante*: as, *Illa quem supra dixi.* Cic.

Tantum is elegantly us'd for *solum*: as, *Nomen tantum virtutis usurpas; quid ipse valeat, ignoras.* Cic. So *santummodo*.

Tum is elegantly us'd for *deinde*: as, *Tum orationes in ea disputatione a se collectæ vocabant me reipublica penitus diffidere.* Cic.

Ubi is elegantly us'd for *in quo, &c.* as, *Ut is cuique locus ubi ipse sit, miserrimus esse videatur.* Cic. Also for *postquam*: as, *Ubi semel quis pejeraverit, ei credi postea non oportet.* Cic.

Vel is elegantly us'd for *saltem*: as, *Postremo, si nullo alio pacto vel sanore.* Ter. Also for *etiam*: as, *Per me vel stertas licet, non modo quiescas.* Cic. *Hoc in genere nervorum vel minimam, suavitatis autem vel plurimum.* Cic.

Velut is elegantly us'd for *exempli causâ*: as, *Bestia, quæ à terra gignuntur, velut Crocodili.* Cic.

Ultra is elegantly us'd for *præterea*: as, *Si probabilior dicentur, ne quid ultra requiratis.* Cic.

Unde is elegantly us'd for *ex quo, &c.* as, *Equidem vobis fontes unde haurietis, atque itinera ipsa putavit esse demonstranda.* Cic.

Unus is elegantly us'd for *solus*: as, *In tuis summis laudibus excipiunt unam iracundiam.* Cic. And *unus & alter* for *duo*: as, *Venit tuus. & item alter.* Ter.

Ut is elegantly put for *quomodo*: as, *Quid agit tua uxor? U. valet?* Plaut. So likewise for *quomodocumque*. Also for *sunt*: as, *Erat etiam ceteris Latinis tum Græcis*

190 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

ut temporibus illis, eruditus. Cic. Also for utpote qui : as, Ille ut fuit semper apertissimus, non per-gavit, sed indicavit. Cic. Also for licet : as, Verum, ut hoc non sit, tamen servat rem-publicam. Cic. Also for postquam : as, Ut ab urbe discessi, nullum prætermisi diem, quin aliquid ad te literarum darem. Cic.

Ut ut is elegantly put for utcumque : ac, Ut ut hæc sunt, tamen hoc faciam.

And thus far of the Particles that a're us'd elegantly for others. I now proceed to those that remain.

Of Particles which are elegantly us'd together with others.

Ab hath usque elegantly join'd to it : as, Sed ab usque Timolo petivis Cic.

Absque hath te or eo effect elegantly join'd to it : as, Nam absque te effect, ego illum haberem rectum. Plaut. Nam absque eo effect, recte ego mihi vidissim. Ter. So, Quam fortunatus ceteris sum rebus, absque una hac feret. Plaut.

Ad hath summum, extremum, postremum, ultimum, elegantly join'd with it : as, Ad summum animo fortis sis. Cic. Nudus atque egens ad extremum fugis e regno. Cic. Ibi ad postremum sedis miles. Plaut. Si fidem ad ultimum præstitissent. Lev.

Aque hath ac, atque, and quam, and ut, elegantly join'd with it : as, Quis esset tantus fructus in prosperis rebus, nisi haberes, qui illis aque ac tu ipso, guaderet ? Cic. Sed me colit & observat, aque atque illum ipsum patronum suum. Cic. Neque ipsam amicitiam tueri possumus, nisi aque amicos & nos ipsos diligamus. Cic. Itaque libentissime prædicabo, Pompeium studio & auctoritate, aque ut unum quemque vestrum pro salute mea laborasse. Cic. Noctibus illustribus aque quam die cernunt. Plaut.

Alius and aliter have ac, &, quam, and atque, elegantly after them : as, Irrept in hominum mentes alia dicentis, ac significantis dissimulatio. Cic. Non alius essem atque nunc sum. Cic. No sim saluus si aliter scribe, ac sentio. Cic. Aliter, atque ostenderam, facie. Cic. Lax denique longe alia est Solis & lychnorum. Cic. Quid hoc est aliud, quam tollere e vita vita societatem. Cic.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 191

Quod de puero aliter ad te scripsit, & ad matrem de filio non reprehendo. Cic. Quod si fors aliterquam voles evenit. Cic.

At hath vero, enim, and etiam, elegantly with it : as, At vero Titus Roscius non unum fefellit socium. Cic. At enim istuc nihil est magis, Syre, meis hupitiis adversum. Ter. At etiam primo callidam & disertum hominem credidi. Ter.

Contra hath ac, atque, and quam, elegantly join'd to it : as, Ut contra: ac dicat, accipi & sentiri velit. Cic. Contra atque apud nos fieri solet. Varro. Contra quam nos supra scripsimus. Gell.

Cum hath tum elegantly answering to it : as, Sumus flagitiose imperati, cum a militibus, tum a pecunia. Cic. Quo audito, vehementer sum commotus, cum de Syria, tum de mea provincia. Cic.

Eo hath elegantly quo, quod, ut, and quia, answering to it : as, Non eo dico, quo mihi veniat in aubium tua fides. Cic. Eo que tardius scripsi ad te quod quotidie teipsum expectabam. Cic. Id autem eo facilius credebatur, quia simile vero videbatur. Cic. Marium ad te eo misi, ut tecum ad me quamprimum veniret. Cic.

Etiam hath nunc, nunc, ne, and tum, elegantly with it : as, Etiam nunc statuere non possunt, utrum—Cic. Quaritur etiamnum, quis cum nuncium miserit. Cic. Etiamne est quid' porro? Plaur. Narrat, ut virgo etiam tum ab se integra fiet. Ter.

Facile is elegantly join'd with primum or princeps : as, Non solum sui municipii, sed illius vicinitatis facile primus. Cic. Eudemus, Platenis auditor, in Astrologia, judicio doctissimorum hominum, facile princeps. Cic. So with almost any Superlative Degree noting praise or Dispraise : as, Plato, unus totius Gracie facile doctissimus. Cic. Perditorum hominum ita similis, ut esset facile deterrimus. Cic.

Jam hath elegantly joyn'd with it a, inde a, and usque ab : as, Jam inde a Consultatu meo. Cic. Jam inde ab Aristotele. Cic. Vetus opinio est jam usque ab heroicis ducta temporibus. Cic. Ut jam a principio vendendum sit, quemadmodum velis pervenire ad extremum.
Cic

192 *The ART of Teaching improv'd;*

Cic. *Philocrates jam inde usque a puero mihi amicus fuit.* Plaut.

In hath several Substantives of Time, Order, or Appearance, elegantly after *i* : as, *Consilia in horas mutari vides.* Cic. *In singulos dies crescit hostium numerus.* Cic. *Non solum de die, sed etiam in diem vivere.* Cic. So, in *præsent*; in *posterum*; in *futurum*; in *perendum*. *Imperium per omnes in orbem ibat.* Liv. *In speciem preces jactantur.* Liv.

Interea hath elegantly *dum* : and *quoad* join'd with it : as, *In tera dum hæc, quæ dispersa sunt, coguntur.* Cic. *Interea quoad fides esset data, Cæsarem facturum quæ polliceretur.* Cæf.

Is hath *ut* and *qui* elegantly join'd with it : as, *Nec tamen is sum ut mea me maxime delectem.* Cic. *Nullo modo is erat, qui nervos virtutis inciderit.* Cic. 1. Acad. 10. 11.

Id hath *æ'tatis* or *temporis* elegantly join'd with it : as, *Duo filii id æ'tatis.* Cic. *Id æ'tatis jam sumus, ut omnia fortiter ferre debeamus.* Cic. *Maxime quod is locus ab omni turbâ id temporis vacuus esset.* Cic. *Venit enim ad me, & quidem id temporis, ut retinendus esset.* Cic.

Ita is elegantly join'd with *non*, or *nec*, or *haud* : as, *Simulachra præclara, sed non ita antiqua.* Cic. *Nec ita multum proventus, rejectus Austro sum in eum ipsum locum unde conscenderam.* Cic. *Tibure haud ita multo ante mortuus est.* Liv. Also with *si*, *ne*, *ut* *ne* : as, *In fœdere additum erat, ita id ratum fore, si populus censuisset.* Liv. *Ita fugias ne præter casam.* Ter. *Sed tamen ita velim (te nobiscum esse,) ut ne quid properes.* Cic.

Juxta hath *at*, *si*, *atque*, and *cum*, elegantly join'd with it : as, *Tum reliquis officiis, juxta at si meus frater esset, sustentavit.* Cic. *Absentium bona juxta atque interemptorum divisa fuere.* Liv. Dec. 1. l. 1. *Juxta rem mecum tene.* Plaut.

Licet hath *per* with his Accusative Case elegantly join'd to it : as, *Per me vel stertas licet, non modo quiescas.* Cic. *Sinatis hunc facere, dum per ætatem licet.* Ter.

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 193

Longè is elegantly join'd with these Words of Difference, Dissimilitude, or Excellence: as, *Longè aliter atque a me dicta erant, detulerunt.* Cic. *Quod est; longè secus.* Cic. *Vir longè homines natos improbissimus.* Cic. *Patus longè princeps municipii Lucensis.* Cic.

Magis hath *quàm* and *si* elegantly join'd with it: as, *Ius bonumque apud eos non legibus magis, quàm natura valebat.* Sal. *Magis dicas, si scias, quod ego scio.* Plaut. It is also elegantly join'd unto Substantives, as well as to uncompar'd Adjectives: as, *Nisi forte magis erit parricida, qui consularem patrem, quàm si quis humilem necaverit.* Cic.

Maxime hath elegantly join'd with it *quàm*, *vel*, *quàm qui*, *ut quisque*, *ut cum*: as, *Disce quàm maxime ad veritatem accommoda.* Cic. *Quæ quidem vel maxime suspicionem movens.* Cic. *Tam sum amicus reipublicæ, quàm qui maxime.* Cic. *Ut quisque maxime, epis indigeat, ita ei potissimum opitulari.* Cic. *Domus ejus celebratur ut cum maxime.* Cic.

Minus hath *si* and *sin* elegantly join'd with it, as, *Si minus necari, ac custodiri oportebat.* Cic. *Quod si affectus sum gaudeo: sin minus, hoc me tamen consolabor.* Cic.

Minime hath *omnium* and *gentium* elegantly with it; as, *Ad te minime omnium pertinebat.*—Cic. *Ab minime gentium; non faciam.* Ter.

Mox hath *quàm* elegantly join'd with it: as, *Quàm mox navigo?* Plaut. *Expecto quàm mox Chæres hac ratione utatur.* Cic.

Ne hath *quidem* and *nunc* elegantly going with it, and *dum* join'd to it: as, *Nunquam illum ne minimam quidem re offendi.* Cic. *Ne nunc senum convivio delecter.* Cic. *Satrapes si fiet amator, nunquam sufferre ejus sumptus queat, nedum tu possis.*

Nec and *neque* are elegantly join'd with *dum*, *enim*, and *vero*: as, *Cassius in ep:as literas misit, nec dum Bibuli erant allata.* Cic. *Neque dum Roma es profectus.* Cic. *Neque enim injuriâ metuebat.* Cic. *Neque vero mihi quisquam præstabilis videtur.* Cic.

Nemo is elegantly join'd with *homo* and *quisquam*: as, *Neminem hominem plaris facio.* Cic. *Nemo quis-*
quar

quam illorum ad te venit. Ter. Also with
and omnium: as, *Nemo est hominum, qui vivat.*
Ter. *Facio pluris omnium hominum neminem.* C.

Nihil hath *ne* quidem, divided by another
elegantly after it: as, *Ad eas ego literas mihi*
si, ne gratulandi quidem causa. Cic.

Nimio hath *plus* elegantly join'd with it:
quia nimio plus te diligo. Cic.

Nimum hath *quantum* elegantly join'd with
as: *Huic generi orationis aspergen ut etiam sales,*
dicendo nimium quantum valent. Cic.

Nisi hath *si*, *quis*, and *siquis*, elegantly join'
it: as, *Nisi si id est, quod suspicor, aliquid mo*
lunt. Ter. *Nisi quis Deus nos respenderit.* Cic
vero si quis est, qui Catilina similes cum Catilina
non putet. Cic. Also *quod*, *quia*, *ut*, and *ut*
Nihil video quod timeam, nisi quod omnia sunt
Cic. *Non dubium est, quin mihi magnum ma*
hac re sit, nisi quia necesse fuit hoc facere. Ter.
agam, nisi ut audiam doctorem tuum. Cic. *Ni*
paucos fuisse arbitramini, qui conari aut sperare
se tantum delere posse imperium. Cic.

Non hath elegantly join'd with it *quin*, *qu*
modo non: as, *Non quin rectum esset, sed quia*
rectius fuit. Cic. *Non quo ea sit mihi quicquan*
us, aut esse debeat. Cic. *Tu id non modo non pro*
verum etiam approbas. Cic.

Nullus hath *quin* elegantly after it: as, *Dies f*
lus est, quin d. mum meam ventitot. Cic.

Nunc hath *denique* and *jam* elegantly with
Nunc denique amare te videor, antea dilexisse. Ci
lum amabam olim, nunc jam alia cura impendet
Plaut.

Nunquam hath *ullus* and *quin* coming elegan
ter it: as, *Nunquam ex tuis ulla mihi litera sunt*
quam unum intermittis diem, quin semper venia

Nusquam hath *gentium* elegantly with it: as
equidem, nisi nunc hodie, nusquam vidi gentium. Pl

Omnino hath *omnis*, *nullus*, *nihil*, *non*, ele
with it: as, *Pis & injuria, & omnino omno q*
futurum est. Cic. *Omnino nulla constitutio, nec*

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 195

tutionis par, potest simul—Cic. Ut non multum aut omnino nihil Græci cederetur. Cic. Poetas Græcos omnino non conor attingere. Cic.

Par hath *ac* and *atque* elegantly join'd to it: as, *Nec mihi par cum Ducio ratio est, ac tecum fuit. Cic. Si par in nobis hujus artis, atque in illo Pictore scientia fuisset. Cic.*

Pariter hath *ac*, *acsi*, *atque*, *atque ut*, &, and *ut*, elegantly coming after it: as, *Pariter nunc op'ra me adjuves, ac dudum re opitulata es. Plaut. Pariter ac si hostes adessent, incedere. Sall. Ecastor pariter hec atque alias res soles. Plaut. Pariter hoc fit, atque ut alia facta sunt. Plaut. Nunc tu es mihi germanus pariter corpore & animo. Ter. Filius pariter moratus, ut pater. Ter.*

Per hath elegantly after it Words relating to Leave, Power, Persons, Time, Manner, Means: as, *Ne id quidem per legem facere potuisti. Cic. Cum per valetudinem & per anni tempus navigare potueris. Cic. Per me vel stertas licet, non modo quiescas. Cic. Nihil interest per procuratorem agas, an per teipsum. Cic. Per tempus advenis. Ter. Roma per id tempus duo maximi fuerunt terrores. Liv. Per ludum & jocum aliquem fortunis evertere. Cic. Quid per virtutem perit, non interit. Plaut. Per insidias interficere. Cic.*

Perinde hath elegantly after it, *ac*, *ut*, *acsi* *quasi*, *atque*: as, *Non perinde, ac est merita, laudatur. Cic. Perinde orit, ut acceperis. Cic. Perinde ac si virtute vicissent. Cic. Perinde quasi certi quicquam sit in rebus h' manis. Cic. Nequaquam perinde atque in capta urbe vagatus est ignis. Liv.*

Post is elegantly plac'd between a Substantive of Time, and his Adjective: as, *Paucis post diebus castra communivit. Liv. Annibal tertio post die, quam venit, copias in aciem eduxit. Liv. Multis post annis pecunia recuperata est. Cic.*

Præ hath *ut*, *quod*, and *quam*, elegantly with it: when Comparison is noted: as, *Parum etiam præ ut futurum est, prædicas. Plaut. Omnes res relictas habeo, præ quod tu velis. Plaut. Præ quam quod molestum est. Plaut.*

396 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

Pridie and *postridis* have *quam* elegantly after the
as, *Hac ego pridie scribebam, quam comitia fore puta-*
tur. Cic. Quid Cause fuerit, postridie intellexi, qua-
vobis discerit. Cic.

Primum hath *cum*, *nunc*, *ut*, *simulac*, and *omni-*
elegantly join'd with it: as, *Cum primum in cam-*
lam veni. Cic. Equidem qui nunc primum huc vene-
sari non queo. Cic. Ut primum potestas data est.
Simulac primum ni. i possunt. Cic. Primum omnium
te fugit. Cic

Pro hath elegantly join'd with it *ut*, *eo ac*, *eo ac-*
que si, *eo ut*, *eo quod*, *et quantum*: as, *Pro ut hoc*
facilius ferebant. Cic. Spero deos, pro eo ac mereor
laturo esse gratiam. Cic. Pro eo acsi concessum sit con-
cedere oportebit. Cic. Pro eo est a que si testis adhibitu-
esses. Ulp. Pro eo ut temporis difficultas, aratorumque
nuncia tuit. Cic. Vereor ne parum tibi eo quod a te l-
reddiderim. Cic. Pro eo, quantum in quibusque sit p-
ris, estimanda sunt. Cic.

Prope hath *a* elegantly join'd with it: as, *Prope a-*
adiis sedebas. Cic. Quo propius aberat ab ortu
melius cernebat. Cic. Also ut: as, *Prope fuit,*
Dictator crearetur. Liv. Prope est factum, ut in
P. Aetoris, in aeternum exirent. Liv. Prope adest, ut p-
fiat. Plaut. Prope adest cum alieno more mihi vivere
est. Ter.

Proximè hath *atque* elegantly coming after it
Non possim ego non aut proximè atque illi aut etiam
laturare. Cic.

Quam hath *ut quomodo*, *contra*, *supra*, *infra*, *du-*
pidem, and *mox* elegantly after it: as, *Hac*
dicta subtilis, quam ut quisvis ea possit agnoscere.
Multa præclara in eo viro cognovi, sed nihil est admi-
lius, quam quomodo ille mortem Marci filii tulit.
Quamquam quid ego de vestro jure contra quam prop-
ram disputabo. Cic. Saepè supra fieret quam fieri p-
Cic. Hic est infra quam illud. Cic. Quam dudum
advenisti. Ter. Quaeso quam pridem hoc nomen, P-
in adversaria retulisti. Cic. Demonstrat, quam p-
sibi hereditas venisset. Cic. Quid expectas quam
ego eos dicam esse Senatores. Cic. Expecto quam

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 197

Clarea hæc oratione utatur. Cic. It is also set with great Elegancy before a Superlative Degree: as, *Sed peto a te, ut quam celerrime mihi librarius mittatur. Cic. Exposui quam brevissime potui oracula. Cic.*

Quin is elegantly us'd after Negative Particles, *Nemo, nullus, nihil, non*: as, *Nemo Lilybæi fuit, quin viderit: in Sicilia quin audierit. Cic. Dies fere nullus est quin hic Satyrus domum meam veniret. Cic. Cause nihil dico, quin ita sit. Cic. Non quin dissentiam, sed quod——Cic.*

Quippe hath *qui, quia, quod, and cum*, elegantly after it: as, *Convivia cum fratre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum quidem, nisi perraro ventebat. Cic. Ego vero laudo. G. Recte sane. Cic. Quippe quia magnarum id remedium agritudinum est. Ter. Ibi multa de mea sententia questus est Cæsar: quippe quod etiam Crassum ante vidisset. Cic. Quippe cum præ te feras, tentare magis, quam consulere Senatam. Liv.*

Quisquam hath *omnium and unus* elegantly joyned wth it: as, *An hoc dubitavit quisquam omnium, quia is venalem in Sicilia jurisdictionem habuerit. Cic. Ne quisquam unus malis artibus postea tam popularis esset. Liv.*

Quisque is elegantly us'd after *se, suis, qui*; an Adjective Numeral; or a Superlative Degree: Also betwixt two Superlatives: as, *Se quisque attingit sua quemque fortuna maxime paucient. Cic. In quo quisque artificio excellit, is in suo genere Roscius dicitur. Cic. Quinto quoque anno Sicilia censetur. Cic. Certe enim recentissima quæque sunt correctæ & emendata maxime. Cic. Optimum quodque rarissimum est. Cic.*

Quo is elegantly us'd with *minus*: as, *Nihil impedit, quo minus id, quod maxime placeat, facere possimus. Cic. Quo minus familiaris sum, hoc sum ad investigandum curiosior. Cic. Also with non*: as, *Non quo de tuâ constantia dubitem, sed quia mos est ita rogandi, rogo. Cic.*

Quod hath *si* elegantly join'd with it: as, *Quod si nihil profecero, nihilominus maximo sum animo. Cic.*

Quotus hath *quisque* elegantly join'd with it: as, *Quotus enim quisque Philosophorum invenitur, qui sit ita moratus. Cic.*

198 The ART of Teaching improv'd.

Secus hath *ac*, *acsi*, *atque*, and *quam*, elegantly after it: as, *Illud non dixi secus, ac sentiebam.* Cic. *Non secus acsi meus esset frater.* Cic. *Sed si aliquanto secus atque in tradenda arte dici soles.* Cic. *Mihi autem erit maxima cura, ne quid fiat si cus quam volumus.* Cic.

Si hath *minus*, and *maxime*, and *quidem*, elegantly with it: as, *Si minus supplicio affici ac custodiri oportebat.* Cic. *Hic noster vulgaris Orator si minus erit doctus, at- tam in dicendo ece citatus.* Cic. *Si maxime statua esset dejecta.* Cic. *O fortunatam rempublicam, si, videm hanc sentinam ceciderit.* Cic.

Similiter hath *ac*, *atque* and *ut si* elegantly after it: as, *Similiter facis, ac si me roge, cur te duobus contuear oculis.* Cic. *Nque vero illum similiter, atque ipse eram, commotum esse vidi.* Cic. *Similiter facies eos, qui inter se condenterent, ut si navis in'er se certarent.* Cic. The Adjective *simili* hath the same Partic'es elegantly after it: as, *Nec similem habeat vultum ac si ampallum perdidisset.* Cic. 4. de Fin. *Ferumque sit, simili nos affectus esse supplicio, atque eos, qui quondam—* Cic de Philos. *Similem pavorem, indeque fugam fore, ac belli Gallico fuerit.* Liv. *Similis erit finis tui atque antea fueras.* Cic. *Similesque sunt, ut si gubernatorem in navigando nihil agere ducant.* Cic. Thence Plaut *Haud consimili ingenio atque ille est.* And Liv *Consilia, haud dissimilia, ac si quis —*

Simul hath elegantly after it *ac*, *atque*, and *ut*: as, *Simul ac mihi collibitum est.* Cic. *Quid is simul atque sensit —* Cic. *Simul ut videro Curionem.* Cic.

Si hath *minus* elegantly join'd to it: as, *Si perficiunt, optime; si minus, ad nostrum Iovem revertantur.* Cic.

Sub hath *statim* elegantly with it: as, *Sub eas l'teras statim tue recitatae sunt.* Cic. Pomp. *Se legionem adducturum sed non statim sub mentionem.* Cic.

Supra hath *quam* and *nihil* elegantly join'd with it: as, *Corpus patiens inedia supra quam cuique credibile est.* Sal. *Ita accurate ut nihil supra.* Cic.

Talis hath elegantly after it *ac*, or *atque*, *ut*, and *qui*: as, *Honos tali paucis est datus, ac mihi.* Cic. *Talis atque hic est infortunio.* Ter. *Vita quidem talis fuit*

In the Grounding of a young Scholar. 199

ut nihil posse accedere Cic. Talem igitur te esse oportet, qui primum te ab impiorum civium societate sejungas. Cic.

Tam hath elegantly after *it* *quàm*. *ut qui. and quàm quis: as. Tam te diligit quàm si vixerit tecum. Cic. Non essem tam inurbanus, ut ego gravarer quod vos cupere sentirem. Cic. Quis est tam Lynceus, qui in tantis tenebris nihil effendat. Cic. Tam levis, quam qui levissimus. Cic. Tam mihi gratum id erit, quamquod gratissimum. Cic.*

Tamen hath *ne* in an Interrogation elegantly. joyned with *it*: *as, Tamenne ista tam absurda defendes. Cic. Also etsi: as, quæ tamen etsi ita scripta sunt. Cic. Tamen et si istuc mihi acerbum est, quia hero te carendum est optimo. Plaut.*

Tantisper hath *dum* elegantly after *it*: *as, Ego hic tantisper dum exit, te opperiar foris. Ter.*

Tantum hath *non* elegantly after *it*: *as, Tantum non statim a funere ad negotiorum consuetudinem redit. Sueton. Also abest: as, Tantum absuit, ut inflammares animos nostros, somnium isto loco vix timebamus——Cic. Tantum abest, ut scribi cuncta nos nolemus, ut id etiam maxime optemus. Cic.*

Tum hath *dedum* and *denique* elegantly after *it*: *as Tum dedum sciam rectè monuisse, si tu rectè caveris. Plaut. Tum denique fore beatas respub putavit, si aut docti, aut sapientes homines eas regere cepissent. Cic.*

Ubi hath *primum* elegantly join'd with *it*: *as, Ubi primum est licitum, illico properavi abire de foro. Plaut.*

Vel hath *maximè* and *optimè* join'd elegantly to *it*: *as, Hoc uno præstamus vel maxime feri——Cic. Cum Sophocles vel optime scripserit, tamen——Cic. 2 de Fin.*

Verò comes elegantly after *ego, id, an, jam, immo, quæ, atsi minime, &c. as, Ego verò, Servi, vellem, ut scribis, in meo gravissimo casu affuisset. Cic. Gratia Sexti Navii no Pub. Quinto noceat, id vero non mediocriter pertimesco. Cic. An verò oblitus estis, judices. Cic. Jam verò virtuti Cn. Pompeii, quæ potest par oratio inveniri. Cic. Quid ergo? hoc solum auditions expete-*

acm apparens. Cic. 4. ue rin.

Utrū hath *quā* elegantly join'd with it :
ordium; *ultrū quā* satis est, produci:ur Cic
gravissime de se opinantem, non ultra quam compea-
cuit Sueton.

Usque hath *a, ab, è, ex, ad, in,* elegantly
it : as, *Usque a mari* supero Romam proficisci. Cic.
prospexit ab ulque Pacyno. Virg. *Usque e Persi*
Qui x ultimā Syriā navigarent Cic. 7. Verr.
usqu ad flumen persequuntur. Cæf 7. B. Gall.
usque n Hispaniam misit Cic. pro Leg. Man-
eo and aico: as *Usque eo* ego illius ferre possum
& *magnifica verba, verba dum sint.* Ter. Sci:
usque adeo, hominem in periculo fuisse, quoad f.
Sextium vivere Cic. *Quis huic urbi neque adeo*
eus, ut ista dissimulare possit? Cic.

Ut hath *statim* elegantly coming with it: a
pus, *ut heri me salutavit, statim Romam profectus.*
So *primum* and *constitit.* Also the Superlative
of an Adverb: as, *Tum appellat hominem ut i*
potest. Cic. pro. Clu. Also it hath elegantly
non, ne, maxime, qui que, quid: as, *Fieri null*
test. ut non dicas auid non probes. Cic. *Atam*

And thus much of the Particles which are elegantly us'd together with others.

Now, as these are not all the Particles whereof there be elegant Uses, so neither are these all the elegant Uses that are made of these Particles; there being as many more, besides these, so very much more observable (and nothing less elegant than what is here said) of these. All I intended herein, was to give the Learner such a Taste of these Delicacies, as might whet his Fancy to a more eager Desire after a fuller Knowledge of them. No withstanding, even these few, well digested, will have such Influence upon all his Exercises, as that no one of them will be without some savoury Relish of pure *Roman* Eloquence. Only I must caution the Teacher, that he patiently bear with, and gently correct his Scholars Mistakes in these Things; which until he be well vers'd in them, he will, for want of Judgment and Experience, be apt to fall into. And this is all I shall say for the present of the Elegancies of the Particles.

C H A P IX.

Of the Idioms of English and Latin.

EVERY Language hath its Idiotisms and Proprieties, Phrases and Forms of Speaking, peculiar to itself, which cannot be render'd Word for Word into any other Language, but with much Barbarity and Baldness of Expression. Thus however it is in English and Latin; insomuch that either way to be *nitium fides interpretes*, to stick too close to the Verbal Translation, will betray a Man into ridiculous Absurdities. Therefore to take the Learner off again from his nice insisting on Verbal Translating, and remedy those Inconveniencies that come by his sticking too close thereto, it will be necessary to ac-
quaint

quaint him with the Idiotisms of both the
and Latin, and shew him how to express hi
either Language according to the respective
ties thereof.

The one Precept, in order to this, is to
Sense more than the Words, and to fit the E
thereunto: That being well render'd, (whe
English or Latin) whose Sense is clearly
express'd in the Language whereby it is
though the Words be more or fewer than we
whence the Translation was made. Observ
deed hath the main Stroke in this Business.
dry Helps may be administer'd. And for the
the Master, and Profit of the Scholar, I
down such as I either conceive, or have fou
ficial in this Case.

One may be for the Teacher to observe
all the elegant Idiotisms, that accidentally
his Lectures and Exercises; and cause him to
down in a Book, and often to review them,
peat them.

Another may be, to put him to learn su
Authors, as are so translated into English, as
Propriety of both Languages is heeded unto
serv'd by the Translator, allowing him the U
Translation. Such are *Tully's Offices* trans
Mr. Brinslee, *Terence's Comedies* by Mr. Bernar
rius's *Colloquies* by Mr. Hoole, &c. and *Janna L*
by Mr. Robotham.

A third may be, to give him a Catalogue
lish Idiotism, barbarously translated, and
with them, by way of Correction, the elega
flation of them, and labour to make him un
the ridiculous Barbarity of the one, and Propr
Elegancy of the other, after this Manner.

Sind me Word, (barbarously) *Mitte mihi verba*
gantly) *Eae me per literas certiores.* *I am shor*
(barbarously) *Brevis sum pecunia,* (elegantly)
me pecunia.

Of this Nature *Corderius* compos'd a who
styl'd, *De corrupti fermenti emendatione*, which

usefully perus'd by any Learner, or young Teacher of the Latin Tongue.

A fourth may be for the Teacher ; first, to read over himself every English that his Scholar is to make into Latin, and to observe what Idotisms occur in that, and to advertise the Learner of them, and shew him how to vary the English Phrase into such other Expression as is capable of an elegant verbal Translation.

But the fifth, (and that which I ever found most beneficial) is to give the Learner to translate some Englishes compos'd all, or most of Idiomatical Expressions, such as cannot, without most ridiculous Barbarity, be translated Word for Word into Latin ; and to shew him, and make him understand the ridiculous Barbarousness of his own verbal Translation, and to furnish him instead thereof with the proper and elegant Expressions. When he hath gone over in translating any one such English, which would be of some pretty Length, then cause him to be very exact in giving him readily without Book, Phrase by Phrase, the corrected Latin for the English, and the English for the Latin. Also make him construe the Latin *verbatim*, so far as may with good Sense be done ; (it were not amiss to make him translate it Word for Word, as far as may be) for this will help him still more to the understanding of the English Phrase, and teach him how to resolve such English Phrases into other Words and Expressions of like Import, and much facilitate the whole Work. After that, cause him to translate it over again, getting new Phrases for every Expression ; and if there be no new Supply (which it is rare but there will be) let him vary what he hath, so as that it may seem new. And let him do again the same with his second Translation, which he did with all the former. And last of all, cause him (looking upon and reading his English,) unless which is better, he can say it without Book) to give for every English Expression several Latin Translations. Then proceed to another ; and still to another

204 *The ART of Teaching improv'd,*

of the same Nature, so long as there shall be Need or Reason.

This Exercise, as it is of all others the most difficult, so also most profitable. It is not imaginable what a strange Alteration to the better it will in a short Time produce in all the Scholar's Performances: And therefore I do most seriously, above all others, recommend it from my own Experience unto Practice.

For the Help of the Scholar in this Work. there are of late sundry Books come forth, viz. Mr. Clark's *Phraſeologia Puerilis*, M. Willis's *Anglicismi Latiniz'd*; and laſt of all, my own *Idiomatologia Anglo-Latina*, or *English-Latin Phraſeology*, in which, if the Learner ſhould be put to get every Day one Head of Phraſes, ſo perfectly at leaſt, as looking only on the English, he can give the Latin for it, and looking only on the Latin, can for it give the English, I ſay not how much it's profiting would be in a ſhort Time, but leave it to Tryal.

And for the Eaſe of the Maſter, there are extant in Mr. Clark's *Dux Grammaticus* (pag. 246, &c.) ſeveral *English Dialogues*, of ſuch Compoſition as I ſpeak, ready for Tranſlation; which, by that time the Scholar hath well gone through with, according to the Way that I ſpeak of, he will (by God's Bleſſing on his Pains and Industry) have attain'd ſuch a Dexterity in tranſlating, that he will now be fit to be put to any Performance, where his Invention ſhall be exercis'd henceforward for Matter, as his Memory all this while hath been for Words; being able to cloath his Thoughts in proper Language, and ſo fit for the higher School, where I leave him to the Maſter's Skill and Care.

But becauſe that Book may not be to be had at every Hand, to be conſulted with, therefore that the Reader may not go without an Exemplification of the thing I propound; and withal, that I may contribute ſtill ſomewhat more towards the Eaſe of the Teacher, and Uſe of the Learner, I have here added ſome new Dialogues of my own contriving for that Purpoſe; the Tranſlation whereof, if perform'd according to the

the Idiom of the Latin, will be no unelegant Composition (as the Latin of them lying by me, if Occasion were. would shew, which I forbear to publish, because the Design of these is only to be Englishes for others to translate into Latin) But if the Idiom of the Latin be not observ'd in the rendering, then the Translation will be bald and unelegant, and indeed not Latin, but a kind of barbarous and ridiculous Gibberish, like that which Petties and Puisnies are us'd to speak.



Certain Idiomatical DIALOGUES, contriv'd on purpose, by the Translation of them, to bring off Children from the Baldness of a verbal Translation.

DIALOGUE I.

Francis.

John.

F. **W**HAT says the Word of me? J. 'Tis the common Speech of the World, that you are too much given to the World. F. This is the Fashion of the World, to say any Thing of any Man. J. I believe you cannot tell which Way in the World to help it. F. Could I do it, it would be as acceptable to me as any Thing in the World. J. It is to no End in the World to go about it. F. I had as lieve as any Thing in the World, I could tell who was the Author of that Slander. Let him go to the World's End, I will resolve to follow him. J. Ah, by no means in the World, you shall not do so, that would be a Piece of the greatest Folly in the World. F. I should be the maddest Man in the World, if I should let such a one as him 'scape scot-free. J. There is nothing in the World more foolish than an angry Man, who minds nothing in the World, but how to revenge himself of those, that have

have done him Wrong. *F.* It makes me so mad to have such a Thing talk'd of me, that I neither know whereabouts in the World I am, nor what in the World to do, nor which way in the World to turn me. *J.* It is one of the strangest Things in the World, that you should be so angry for a Thing of nothing. *F.* I had as good be out of the World, as live to be so slander'd in it. *J.* You talk just for all the World, as if there were no where in the World any to be found who were as ill talk'd of as you. *F.* Go any whither in the World, and all the World over, you will find none who deserves less than I do, to be so ill talk'd of. *J.* As the World rules, you shall find few but suffer as ill as you do. And this is no new Complaint, but now come up. In elder Times *Socrates*, and a World more, who are many Years since gone to the other World, who yet will be well spoken of to the World's End, were in every whit in as bad a Case as you. And he were the maddest Man in the World, that should think not to fare as others do. *F.* It is a World of Wrongs that I have suffered in this Respect: But there seems to be somewhat of Reason in what you speak, and therefore let the World go which way it will, I will resolve to take all well. *J.* 'Tis Christian-like done of you: and when the World and all Things in the World shall come to nothing, than shall the Benefit of this so great Contentedness of yours be in Being.

DIALOGUE II.

*Charles.**Anthony.*

C. **H**OW do Horses sell here, *Anthony*? *A.* They are Things that a while ago would have given Money, but now-a Days they hardly give any Thing. *C.* But Bullocks surely bear a Price. *A.* Truly within this few Years they would have given something, but now they too are much fallen in Price: Horses will give more than they yet. You may buy a good Pair of Bullocks for eight Pound. *C.* And

C. And are Farms down of Price too? A. How should they be otherwise, when Corn gives so little? I have a Piece of Land to sell; I am confident there is no better in all this Country, and that will give more, and yet I may go seek my Chapman, C. How do you value it? set a Price on it: I'll be your Chapman, if we can agree of a Price. A. Take it for an hundred Pound. C. You are over dear of it; it is not worth so much; but give me your Hand, here's fifty for you. A. It is worth as much more, if a Man might have to its Worth of it. C. Chuse it: I will not give a Penny more for it. A. And I will not take a Penny less for it. C. Then I do not believe we shall agree. A. I cannot help that, unless I mean to undo my self, as God forbid I should. I stand not in so great Need yet I thank God. No doubt but within a while Land will rise of Price again. C. Will you take my Money before I go? I will pay you down ready Money. A. I have told you my Price. I cannot abate a Penny of it. If you like it so, I will be my Word's Master. C. If that be your Mind, I shall give over, and not give you one Word more. A. As you have a Mind: I have told you my Mind. C. Then farewell, *Anthony*. A. Farewel to you, *Charles*.

DIALOGUE III.

Edward.

Andrew.

E. **A** *Andrew*, it gave me in my Mind, there would be somewhat to do betwixt *George* and *Thomas*, before they had done and parted. A. What's the Matter, Ned? E. It so fell out, that they fell out so, that it came at last to handy Stroaks. A. That's a bad Matter; but who, I pray thee, got the better of it? E. Though *Thomas* was the better Cuffer, and for a while had the better of it, yet at last they parted even Hands: For if *Thomas* gave *George* a Dath on the Teeth, and made him give back, *George* had a good Heart, and well knowing what a stout Man he

he had to do withal behav'd himself like a Man, and would not give out, but gave him like for like. *A.* What was the Matter that they fell together by the Ears? *E.* *George* making his Boast, that he was defended from a Knight, gave out, that he was come of as good a House as *Thomas* was. Whereupon *Thomas* took *George* a Box on the Ear; and withal gave him Warning to give over his comparing himself with him, who was of noble Blood; and said moreover he would give him as much more, if he took not Heed. *A.* What Answer did *George* give to this? *E.* He only gave him a Challenge into the Field, and then gave him never a Word more. *A.* And I am of your Mind too; for they should not have given Way to their Anger, but have given Satisfaction to one another, as Reason was; in as much as Christ, in the Laws that he hath given the Church, hath given us in Charge not to do, but as we would be done unto; but they that wholly give themselves to Pleasure, as most young Men do, little mind the Laws of Christ, or give their Minds to the keeping of them. *E.* I hope they were made Friends again. *A.* Yes, that they were, and they are now as great Friends as ever. *E.* I pray you who made them Friends? *A.* One that is a very great Friend to them both, as they give out, came upon them; as they were fighting, and parted the Fray betwixt them, and prevail'd to far with them, that he made them Friends: And from henceforth I hope they will be always Friends. *E.* In Truth it was kindly done of him, and like a Friend, to set them at one again. *A.* Indeed it was done of him like a Christian; and no doubt but in Time he shall get that Blessing, which Christ in his Gospel hath promised to give unto the Peace-makers for it. *E.* I give God Thanks for it, that the Matter ended so; for I was a little fearful what the End of it would be.

D I A L O G U E IV.

Matthew.

Adrian.

M. **A** *Drian*, how came that into *William's* Head, to marry a Wife that is so old she is past Child-bearing? *A.* In Truth, *Matthew*, that I cannot tell now, but this I'll pass you my Word for, that all is past and done between them, and that without many Words passing on either Side. And to say Truth, so pretty a Woman she was, and so young to see to, that she might have pass'd for a Child-bearing Woman. *M.* I believe then, as Matters pass, he hardly hath a Wife to his Mind. *A.* There is no Day almost passeth him, but he wishes himself unmarried again a hundred Times over. But now 'tis past Cure, he is undone; and tho' in Times past he did ever pass his Time in Pleasure, yet must he now pass the rest of his Life in Trouble. *M.* I am sorry the Matter is brought to that pass, though there were that said it would so come to pass, that he would repent of his marrying before three Days were pass'd and come to an End. *A.* For the most Part it so comes to pass, as indeed it needs must come to pass, when Men, that are scarce past Children, rashly run on their own Heads, and pass not for the Advice of their Friends, who far pass them in Wisdom and Experience, by which they might more happily bring their Purposes to pass. *M.* I believe it is come to pass, as some Men wish'd, whom I think good to pass over without mentioning. For my self I am past marrying, and so pass not for my self. Only I wish that some would take Warning by others Harm. *A.* Let us let these Things pass as Things of no Concernment unto us, and pass away the Time in other Talk. *M.* At present I am a little busy, so that I cannot carry any longer with thee; To-morrow, and you please, we will meet again, and talk our Bellies full. *A.* Agreed. And in the mean Time fare you well.

DIALOGUE V.

*Mark.**Paul.*

M. I Wonder, *Paul*, what should be the Reason, that there was such a Quarter kept at *Genova*. *P.* *Cæsar*, hearing that the Enemy had broke out from all Quarters, though sooner than ordinary, drew his Soldiers out of their Winter-Quarters into the Field. *M.* There was some Reason for it; but where did they Quarter? *P.* About that Time they had taken up their Quarters about *Marsell*. *M.* What became of that Stir? *P.* *Cæsar* beating up their Quarters all on a sudden, put them into such Disorders, that they presently forsook their Arms, and took to their Heels, and run away. Nevertheless a Quarter of the Enemies Army was slain. *M.* What became of the rest? *P.* Some escaped by Flight, others were taken alive, and had Quarter given them. *M.* He play'd his Part finely. But I heard there was no Quarter given. *P.* Nay, they that asked for Quarter, they only being killed that would not take Quarter. *M.* 'Twas Prince-like done; for as the Poet long since said, it is the Part of a Prince to spare them that submit, but to bring down those that stand out.

DIALOGUE VI.

*Richard.**Peter.*

R. LET us consider, *Peter*, how far it may be fit for us to make our selves to do in this Affair. *P.* In truth I do not think it fit that we our selves should be at the doing of it. *R.* What else do you think fit to be done then? *P.* I think we must think of, and at a fit Time send over rather a Man fit for that Employment. *R.* Money is fit; and I desire by all Means that what is fit should be done; but I cannot think of a Man fit to send; and this Business is not fit to be put to every one, but one that is fit for the Turn, and will do no more but what is fit. *P.* You do as
ic

it is fit you should. But what think you of *Giles*, a Man fit for any Thing, and that can fit his Speech to any Turn: and who hath now got Shoes so fit for his Feet, that though a while ago he had a Fit of the Gout, yet now he is compleatly fitted for going, may not he fit our Turn? *R.* He will do well for a Fit; but sometimes he falls into a Fit of talking, and then talks more than is fit, and so mars all. *P.* If his Wit do but come by Fits, it were more fit that lame *Giles* were let alone, and not sent at this Fit. *R.* 'Tis as I tell you.

DIALOGUE VII.

Thomas.

George.

T. **G** *George*, have you heard the News of *Robert*? *G.* What that he is over Head and Ears in Love? *G.* I mar'l who put it into his Head to love that Wench. This Mischief will fall on his Pate, be he who will be. *G.* I imagine he went to her of his own Head. *T.* But do not he and *Richard* lay their Heads together sometimes? *G.* You have hit the Nail on the Head. *T.* Some Mischief or other will light on their Heads. But this it is to give young Men their Heads, who do Things of greatest Concernment they care not how, and Hand over Head. *G.* But if it should come into his Father's Head, who is one of the Heads of the People, that he had any such Mind, he would go near to break his Head with his Staff next Time he met him, though he were sure to have a smart Fine set on his Head for it afterwards. *T.* 'Twere more fit he were bravely leading Soldiers in the Head of an Army, than so basely lying in a Lady's Lap. *G.* In truth it is just as you say. But thus you see the World rules. Farewel.

DIALOGUE VIII.

*Cornelius.**Tiberius.*

C. LIST to, *Tiberius*, have you read the List of the Sword-players? *T.* Yes, *Cornelius*, I have read it all over. *C.* Hath *Sisennius* list'd himself among them? *T.* He was not in that List that I saw. *C.* 'Tis like he hath no List, either to enter the Lists with any Man, or so much as to run from the Lists to the Goal. *T.* Why should a Man undertake what he hath no List to? Let every Man do as he lists? *C.* 'Tis a fine Thing indeed for a Man to live as he lists; but that is not as every Man lists. *T.* He may do what he lists, that lists to do but what he may.

DIALOGUE IX.

*Giles.**Humphry.*

G. HOW now, *Humphry*? what makes you so sad, is all well at home? *H.* I would it were: For to tell you truly, we are in an ill taking for my Brother *Harry*. *G.* What's the Matter? *H.* Woe is me! three Days ago, without making any Body acquainted with his Purpose, he took Boat, and went over Sea; and what is become of him we cannot tell. *G.* How can you tell that he is gone over Sea? *H.* We were told it by one, whose Word may be taken, and who came to us on Purpose to tell us. *G.* Is your Father made acquainted with it yet? *H.* Yes, we told him of all. *G.* And what said he to it? how did he take it? Did he not take on, when he was told it? *H.* We were somewhat afraid he should take some Harm by it, if we should tell him; but he seem'd to take it very patiently. He only said, since Folly hath taken so deep Root in him, that he will neither take my Counsel, nor take Example by others to do well, but still takes bad Courses, let him take his Swing for me, and take his Course. *G.*

I was afraid he should have taken it mightily to Heart; but it seems he never takes Thought what becomes of him. *A.* You are mightily mistaken, *Giles*; for though he makes as though he did not grieve, yet it grieves him to the Heart, and you may see it by his Words, which if you take them not in the wrong Meaning, do plainly enough shew that he is ill vex'd. Take my Word for this, he is so troubled in Mind, how closely soever he carries it, that he is quite taken off from Business, and lets all be at sixes and sevens. *G.* What Course do you think your Brother will take now? *H.* I suppose he will take his Pleasure as long as his Money lasts, which he took up at Use before he went, and took away with him when he went. After, he must take his Fortune. *G.* While he takes these so wrong Courses, he hardly takes after his Father. *H.* No, no; he takes not at all after him: He took a wiser Course. *G.* But hath he not been us'd to take Pains? Or is he unable to take any Pains? *H.* He hath taken some Pains in some kind of Studies, which some People are mightily taken with, and he must shortly take his Choice, whether he will take Pains, or starve. *G.* For he hath afore now spent more Money, than he took with him now, in less than a Year's Time. *G.* In my Mind, it will be the best Course he can take, to come back; and if he do, no Doubt his Father will be glad to see him, and within a while take to him again. *H.* God forbid else. Yet this I assure my self of, that when Time serves, he will take him aside, and take him up sharply for his going away. *G.* There is no Doubt of this; and it it wil be but fit for him so to do. *H.* God send he but come well Home; and for the rest I take no great Care.

DIALOGUE X.

*Orbilins.**Devus.*

O. **Y**OU Boy, loose this arrant Knave's Points, and down with his Breeches. I'll pay him soundly as I live. Why don't ye stir? Give me a Rod, Somebody, quick, Go to, take him upon your Back; up with him I say, aloft. D. Sir, will you punish me before you have heard me speak for my self? Do me right or be no Master. O. so I will; for I will serve you as you deserve. D. But that you may not abuse me, hear me I pray you first; what I have to say for my self. O. As if you could say any Thing for your self worth hearing! a likely Matter. D. Truly, Sir, you cannot tell, untill you have heard. O. Say then quickly what you have to say. D. This I say then, that you are too much in Passion at present to do right in punishing: For it cannot be, that he should observe a Measure in punishing, that keeps Anger while he punisheth. And therefore do as *Plato* did, who, as they report, said to his Servant, that had done a Fault, *But that I am angry, I would beat thee*; and let the punishing of me alone till another Time. And do not go to beat me now in your Anger; least you repent it afterwards when it shall be too late. O. How finely the Knave plays the Philosopher? Well, that you may not hereafter say, you have to do with an unreasonable Beast, and not with a Man of Reason, I will let you alone for the present, and call you to an Account hereafter, for what you have done amiss this Day. Let him down. D. Thus farewell, I have gain'd Time; I may perhaps too get my Pardon at last. In the mean Time I'll have a Care to offend no more.

*A Threefold Latin Translation of Mr. Clark's
first English Dialogue in his Dux Gram-
mat. p. 246.*

Henry.

H. **W**hat a world is
this! What
should a man say to it? when
every body falls thus foul
upon poor and most harmless
Innocents; 'tis all one, as the
world rules, to be a knave
and an honest man, now a-
days.

R. Indeed for the most
part they fare alike; or ra-
ther the better a man is, the
worse he is dealt withal for
the most part.

H. What wonder? when
men are so given to lying,
and fellow wickedness, and
give their minds to nothing,
but to devise mischief.

R. Men take such bad
courses, that one knows not
whom to trust.

H. Before I take this at
their hands, and put up so
gross wrongs, I'll do any
thing.

R. You are as much to

Robert.

H. **H**em, qui hic rerum
status est! quid
dicas? Cum nemo non
tam indigne in paupercu-
los summeque innoxios
homunculos impetum fa-
ciat; perinde est, ut nunc
sit, utrum nebuloso sis, an
vir bonus, hoc tempore.

R. Revera utrisque co-
dem magnam partem usu
venit: vel potius quan-
to sanctioribus quis mo-
ribus vixerit, tanto fere
modis indignioribus tra-
ctatur.

H. Quid mirum? cum
ita sint plerique proclives
ad mentendum & ad fla-
gitium quodvis perpetranda-
dum, nec ad aliud quic-
quam adjiciant animum,
quam ad malum molien-
dum.

R. Ita pravis vivitur
moribus, ut parum con-
stet cui quis fidem habeat.

H. Potius quam istuc
ab iis accipiam, atque im-
pune fieri mihi tam insigni-
ter injuriam patiar, om-
nia agam [omnem move-
bo lapidem]

R. Simili ipse in culpa
blamitur

216 The ART of Teaching improv'd,

blame in that you look to fare better. Ill will never speaks well. Never take it to heart man.

H. Why, what must I do then?

R. I would have you to follow my council, please god and your own conscience, and do your duty in your place.

H. If a man be taken tardy, and do amiss but once, he is sure to hear of it at every hand.

R. Be ruled by me, and never take that to heart, that they set at their heels, and care not a pin for them all.

H. 'Tis not so easy a matter as you think, to take these things well. God give us patience, for we stand in great need thereof.

R. Indeed they had as good take a man's purse by the high way side, as to rob him of his good name; and they might even as well hang him outright, as thus to use him.

H. 'Tis as dishonourable, for they must answer at God's judgment seat for the one, as well as at earthly bars for the other.

R. 'Tis no very strange

versaris, meliore qui loca tuas fore res expectes. Mala mens, mala lingua. Ne te propter ea afflictus [animi angas]

H. Quid itaque mihi agendum est?

R. Meo de consilio velim facias, Deo, animique tui conscientiae placeas, & quam es nactus hanc provinciam ornes.

H. Si quis oscitans opprimatur, unicuique vel vice titubaverit, non dubium est quin magno ei passim probrosaturum sit.

R. Ausculta mihi, ne sic ea tibi res sollicitudini, quam illi fusque de que habent, quin eos omnes non tanti aestimes.

H. Haud ita est facile, ac tibi videtur, æquo ista animo tolerare. Donet nobis Deus patientiam; nam illa multum nobis opus est.

R. Unum sanè & idem hoc est, regia eunti via marsupium auferre, atque bonam ejus existimationem lœdere; quin æque eum vel patibulo suspendant, atque modis ita indignis accipiant.

H. Æque inhonestum est, tam enimalterius reddenda est ab iis ratio pro tribunali divino, quam aliterius in foro humano.

R. Non magnopere mihi.

Thing.

Thing, for thus have they done with the best men ever since the apostle's times.

H. And for any thing I see, there is small hope of mends, men rather grow worse and worse.

R. Be you content therefore. Mind your calling, look to your book, study hard and follow learning, for all that men say or do of you.

H. I see now he must rise betimes that pleaseib all. Farewel.

randum est, hoc enim pacto cum virorum optimis ab apostolicis jam usque temporibus egerunt.

H. Et quantum ego perspicio, quam exigua illorum corrigendi spes est, potius indices in pejus proficiunt.

R. Quin tu ergo acquiesce, res tuas sedulo age, summam in libros curam impende, animum ad rei literariæ studium diligenter adjuuge, plurimumque confer operæ ad consequendam eruditionem ut de te populi sermo sit.

H. Experior jam perquam esse difficile placere omnibus. Vale.

Henricus. &c.

*H. Q*Uæ hujus mundi cōditio est? quid sentias? cum tantis illi passim injuriis afficiantur pauperum qui maxime sunt innocui; eodē recidit, quomodo nunc est, frugine quis, an nequam homo sit, his temporibus.

R. Similia sane uterque eorum magna ex parte patiuntur; seu potius quo quis vir præstantior

Robertus.

A. O Qualis est hæc rerum facies? quid cui possit in mentem venire? quando in pauperiorum quosque innocentiores tam fœde undique a quibusque incurritur, tantundem est, ut mores sunt, sive quis probus sive improbus fuerit nunc dierum.

R. Profecto pariter cum utroque maximam partem agitur, sive potius quo quis homo melior audit, eo ple-
fuerit

fuerit, hoc plurimum deterius cum illo agitur.

A. Quid hoc monstri est? cum adeo strenua datur à plerisque opera mendaciis confingendis omnibusque vitæ turpitudinibus in se admittendis, neque adjungatur ad aliud quicquam animus, nisi ad perniciem comminiscendam.

H. Sic flagitiosa à plerisque omnibus vita agitur, ut incertum sit in quo fiducia reponatur.

P. Prius quam æquo istuc animo feram, adeoque insigni me injuriâ affici inultus perpetiar, nihil non experiar [cælo terram miscebo]

R. Tuam in vitio ipse es, quod melius actum iri tecum speras. Malevoli, maledici. Ea noli re te macerare [ægritudini dedere.]

H. Quid me ergo facere oportet?

R. Quod ego tibi dedero consilium id exsequere, Divino numini mentique tuæ recti conscientiae obsecunda, tuumque pro loci tui ratione officium cole.

H. Si quis delictum in se admisisse offendatur, se-

runtque pejora patitur.

H. Haud mirabile est: quando tam sunt homines proni ad mendacia excogitanda, & improbissima quæque facinora facienda, atque ad nihil applicant animum præterquam machinandum aliis pestem.

R. Adeo pravis plerique utuntur consiliis, ut nescias cui fidem habeas.

H. Citius quam ego isthuc boni consulam, tantumque factam mihi injuriam impunitam dimittam, nihil intactum relinquam [Acheronta movebo.]

R. Tua non minor culpa est, cum rectius iri tibi consultum vis. Malevolorum nunquam non malus sermo. Hæc te res ne male habeat [cave cordi tuo doleat]

H. Quid igitur debebo ego facere?

R. Meam velim auctoritatem & consilium sequere. Deo propriæque mentis conscientiae morem geras, ac tuum quo es loco munus sedulus præstes.

H. Facinore si in ullo deprehendaris, atque om-

melque

mélque unquam perperam egerit, non deerunt qui id ei primâ quâque occasione exprobrent.

R. Me audi, neque ullâ sis de eo sollicitudine, quod hi pro nihilo ducunt, atque universos illos flocci facias.

H. Majores est res negotii quàm tu opinaris, æquibonique hæc consulere. Patientiâ donet nos Deus, hæc enim nos quàm maxime egemus.

R. Una profectò res est five cui nummos regiam secus viam adimant, five existimationi ejus infamiae maculum inurant; Imò satius esset, ut è vestigio eum suspendio stranguleat, quàm tanta contumelia excipiant.

H. Perinde est inglorium; æque enim respondendum est illis de altero ad Dei tribunal, atque de altero ad cancellos forenses.

R. Minime mirum est, nam ad hunc modum spectatissimos quosque viros jam inde ab ipsis Apostolis tractarunt.

H. Quantum verò ego intelligere possum, fore ut in meliores evadant vix est sperandum, magis in-

nino semel lapsus fueris, id tibi ab omnibus propteres se tulerit, vitio vertetur.

R. Mihi obtempera, nolique ob illud tuum sollicitare animum, quod isti sibi despiciatui habent, sed illos cunctos nec pili pendas.

H. Non adeò expedires est atque tu existimas, hæc humaniter ferre. Impariat nobis Deus patientiam, etenim nos hujus vehementer indigemus.

R. Revera nihil interest utrum aliquem regiam juxta viam pecuniis exuant, an ignominie fordibus ejus famam deturpent; quin etiam eadem opera ei laqueo gulam frangant, quæ illum tam indigne tractant.

H. Nihilo minus est infame, nam tam debebunt Deo reddere rationem de altero, quam de altero hominibus.

R. Non est hoc adeò monstri simile, quando quidem ipsis jam inde usque ab Apostolis ita cum optimis quibusque viris agi solitum est.

H. Atque ut mea perspicientia est, vix est ut speres futurum, ut unquam corrigantur, potius in pe-

deterius

220 *The ART of Teaching improv'd, &c.*

deterius quotidie à peris-
que degeneratur.

R. Tu itaque contentus
sorte tua abi, munus tuum
dignè administra, strenu-
am in libris operam pone,
in studia tua diligenter in-
cumbe, omnèque in do-
ctrina consequenda tem-
pus tuum colloca, quic-
quid de te ab aliis dicatur,
agaturve.

H. Nunc perspicio mul-
ti esse rem laboris nemini
displicere.

jus magis magisque prola-
buntur

R. Æqui igitur boni-
que tu isthæc consule, tuum
quod tibi datum est pen-
sum confice, libris tuis ani-
mum intende, in studiis
tuis omnes industriæ tue
nervos contende, bonisque
te totum literis dede, quo-
cunque te homines loco,
numerove habeant.

H. Compertum habeo
jam maximo esse illi opere
annitendum cui in animo
est omne ut pñctum ferat.

A Summary Account of the whole Treatise.

CHAP. I.

O F the forming of Nouns,	Page 1
The English Signs of Cases to be well known,	ibid.
The Manner of Forming Nouns through every Case of eve- ry Declension,	2
Of the various Terminations of sundry Cases,	3
Of the Dative and Ablative Case Plural of the first De- clension,	4
Of the Vocative Singular of the second Declension,	5
Of Nouns ending in us in the Vocative Singular of the se- cond Declension,	ibid.
Of [i] in the Vocative from Nominatives in us,	6
Of ai and ei in the Vocative Singular,	ibid.
Of the Accusative Singular of the third Declension,	ibid.
Nouns ending in im,	ibid.
Nouns ending in em and im,	ibid.
Of the Ablative Singular of the third Declension,	7
Nouns having [i] in their Ablative Singular,	ibid.
The Ablative of Neuters al. ibid. In ar, ibid. Or e,	ibid.
The Ablative of Adjectives in is or er,	8

The CONTENTS.

<i>The Ablative of Adjectives deriv'd of proper Names,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>The Ablative of Words having only im in the Accusative Case,</i>	9
<i>Nouns having both e and i in the Ablative Singular,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>The Ablative Singular of Substantives having em and im in their Accusative.</i>	10
<i>The Ablative of Adjectives of one Termination,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Of par and his Compounds,</i>	11
<i>The Ablative of Adjectives of the Comparative Degree,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Of the Terminations eis and is in the Nominative and Accusative Plural of the third Declension</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Of the Nominative and Accusative Plural of the Third Declension in the Neuter Gender,</i>	12
<i>What Words of the third Declension end in a, and what in ia,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Of the Genitive Plural of the third Declension,</i>	13
<i>What Words have ium in the Genitive Plural,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>The Genitive of Words having i in their Ablative Singular,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>The Genitive Plural of Words of two or more Syllables ending with two Consonants,</i>	14
<i>The Genitive Plural of Nouns in er, es, and is not increasing,</i>	15
<i>The Genitive Plural of Polysyllables increasing in the Genitive Singular,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>The Genitive Plural of several Sorts of Monosyllables,</i>	16
<i>The Genitive Plural in ium syncopated,</i>	17
<i>Some in ium have also orum,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Greek Words in ma having both um and orum in their Genitive Plural,</i>	18
<i>Of on in the Genitive Plural,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Of the Dative Plural of the third Declension,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Neuter Greek Words having both ibus and is in the Dative and Ablative Plural,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Of the Genitive Singular of the fourth Declension,</i>	19
<i>Of the Words of the fourth Declension having i in the Genitive Case, ibid. and is and uis,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Of the Dative Singular of the fourth Declension,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Of Words having u in the Dative Singular of the fourth Declension,</i>	20
<i>Of the Ablative Singular of the fourth Declension,</i>	<i>ibid.</i>

The CONTENTS.

<i>Of the Genitive Plural of the fourth Declension,</i>	ibid.
<i>Of the Dative Plural of the fourth Declension,</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Words ending in ubus,</i>	21
— <i>and both ubus and ibus,</i>	ibid.
<i>Of the Genitive Singular of the fifth Declension,</i>	ibid.
<i>Of es in the Genitive Singular of the fifth Declension,</i>	ibid.
— <i>and i 22, and e,</i>	ibid.
<i>Of e in the Dative Singular of the fifth Declension,</i>	22

C H A P. II.

<i>Of the comparing of Adjectives. The Way to learn it,</i>	22
<i>Of irregular Comparisons,</i>	23
<i>Comparatives and Superlatives form'd from Positives having a Vowel before us,</i>	ibid.
<i>Of defective Comparisons.</i>	25
<i>Adjectives wanting the Positive Degree,</i>	ibid.
<i>Adjectives wanting the Comparative Degree,</i>	26
<i>Adjectives wanting the Superlative Degree,</i>	ibid.
<i>Adjectives wanting both the Positive and Superlative Degree.</i>	27
<i>Of Redundant Comparisons,</i>	ibid.
<i>Two Superlative from one Positive,</i>	ibid.
<i>A Comparative form'd from a Superlative,</i>	ibid.
<i>Adjectives not compar'd,</i>	28

C H A P. III.

<i>Of the forming of Verbs,</i>	29
<i>The Tenses form'd one from another,</i>	ibid. & Seq.
<i>The Way to learn to form Verbs,</i>	30
<i>The Benefit of forming Verbs,</i>	31
<i>Of Verbs Defective,</i>	32

C H A P. IV.

<i>Of Translating English into Latin,</i>	35
<i>The Time for a Scholar to begin to make Latin,</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Pointing, and Rules for it,</i>	36, 37
<i>Making Latin, best begun with Translating,</i>	44
<i>In Translating, the Natural Order of Words to be observed,</i>	45
<i>General Rules touching the Natural Order of Words,</i>	ibid.
<i>Special Rules for the Natural Order of Words,</i>	46
<i>The Way to teach the Natural Order of Words;</i>	ibid.
<i>The first entering of a Scholar into Translating,</i>	48
<i>Directions for making plain Latin,</i>	49

The CONTENTS.

To know what Words the Relative is govern'd of	60
Directions to bring Children to understand the Difficulties about the Relative,	ibid.
Of the Ablative Case Absolute,	63
What the Teacher is to do with and at his Scholar's Translation,	ibid.
Parsing to be perform'd by the Scholar alone,	ibid.
Englishes for Translation to be contriv'd suitable to the Grammar Rules,	ibid.
Examples of such Englishes in the first Concord,	ibid.
In the second Concord,	71
In the third Concord,	74

C H A P. V.

Of the Artificial Order and elegant placing of Words, And Clauses,	76 85
--	----------

C H A P. VI.

Of the Use of Phrases,	86
How to store a Scholar with Phrases,	87
A Collection of Phrases out of Hermes Anglo-Latinus,	88
A Collection of Phrases out of Goodwin's Antiquities,	102
How to shew the Use of Phrases,	119
Thirty four Dialogues compos'd (in order to the shewing of Children to the Use of Phrases) out of, or agreeably unto the Phrases collected out of Hermes Anglo-Latinus,	122
Thirty three Dialogues compos'd out of, or agreeably unto the Phrases collected out of Goodwin's Antiquities,	140

C H A P. VII.

Of the Variation of Phrases,	169
Rules of Variation,	ibid.
How to vary a Verb Active, <i>ibid.</i> Passive,	170
Ablative Case absolute,	ibid.
Adjectives with <i>res</i> ,	171
Adjective of the Neuter Gender,	ibid.
Letter of two Substantives,	ibid.
Adjective Absolute in the Neuter with his Genitive Case,	ib.
Adjective with his Substantive wherewith he agrees,	ibid.
Accusative Case before the Infinitive mood,	176
Nominative Case with his Verb, and <i>quod</i> or <i>ut</i> ,	ibid.
Habeo,	ibid.
Genitive Case with his one Partitive,	ibid.

Genitive

The CONTENTS.

<i>Genitive Case after a Superlative Degree,</i>	ibid.
<i>Infinitive Mood Active,</i>	ibid.
<i>Infinitive Passive after an Adjective,</i>	173
<i>Comparative Degree,</i>	ibid.
<i>Superlative Degree,</i>	174
<i>Single Words,</i>	175
<i>Sentences,</i>	177

C H A P. VIII.

<i>Of the Elegancies of the Particles,</i>	180
<i>Particles elegantly us'd, where other Expressions are not elegant,</i>	181
<i>Particles elegantly us'd for others, which are not unelegant,</i>	184
<i>Particles elegantly us'd in Contexture together with others,</i>	190

C H A P. IX.

<i>Of the Idioms of English and Latin,</i>	201
<i>How to bring a Scholar to render English Proprieties according to the Propriety of the Latin,</i>	202
<i>Ten English Dialogues consisting of Idiomatical Expressions contriv'd on purpose for Translation, and to bring Children off from the Baldness of a Verbal Translation to a more elegant Way of Writing,</i>	205
<i>One English Dialogue, with a Threen-fold Latin Translation of it, to exemplify Variety of elegant Translation of the same English Idiom,</i>	215

*Books printed for J. Batley, at the Dove in
Pater-noster-Row.*

A Complete Body of Divinity. Consisting of Five Parts. 1. Of the Being, Nature, and Attributes of God, and of the Evidences of Divine Revelation. 2. Of the Works of Creation, and Providence. 3. Of the most memorable Transactions, from the Beginning of the World, to the Coming of Christ; with proper Dissertations upon each. 4. Of the Mysteries of our most Holy Faith. 5. Of the Great Precepts of Moral and Evangelical Righteousness. The whole extracted from the best ancient and modern Writers.

A Catalogue of Books.

but chiefly from the Works of such, as have been reputed the most able Divines, and celebrated Preachers amongst us. To which are added, Two Tables, 1. An Alphabetical Table of the chief Matters. 2. A Table of Texts of Scripture explained, and more especially referred to in this Work. By *Tho. Stackhouse*, A. M.

Cambdenus Illustratus, five Græca Grammatica luculenta quâ ad accuratissimum Græcæ Linguae Scientiam, muturius & facilius Ingenium quodvis minus capax, parvo temporis intervallo pervenire possit. In usum studiosæ Juventutis Editio Secunda.

Q. Horatii Flacci Eclogæ una cum Scholiis perpetuis tam veteribus quam novis; adjecit etiam ubi visum est & sua; textumque ipsum plurimis locis vel corruptum vel turbatum restituit *Willielmus Baxter*.

Minellius Anglicanus, five *Publii Ovidii Nasonis Metamorphoseon Libri 15*: Una cum Argumentis-cujusque Fabulæ, Notisque Minellianis Anglice redditis; & insuper Clave numericali singulis lineis adjecta, facileque ordinem expositionis indicante, in usum Scholarum. Opera & studio *N. Bailey*.

Ovid's Tristia, in Five Books, Arguments and Notes of *John Minellius*, translated into *English*. To which is added, a Prose Version, viz. the very Words of *Ovid*, digested into the proper Order they ought to be taken in construing; by the Assistance of which, young Scholars, of but very small Acquaintance with the Rules of Grammar, may be enabled of themselves with Ease and Pleasure, to learn their Lessons without Interruption to the Teacher, for the Use of Schools. By *N. Bailey*, Author of the Universal, Etymological *English Dictionary*.

Electa Majora ex Ovidio, Tibullo, & Propertio: cum Consolatione ad *Liviam*; usui Scholæ Etonensis: Tertio Castigata & ubi visum Explicata.

Electa Minora ex Ovidio Tibullo & Propertio usui Scholæ Etonensis: quarto castigata & ubi visum Explicata. *Virgilius, Florus, Ovidius, Sallustius, Horatius, Terentius, Justinus Historia, Juvenalis, Plautus*, in usum Delphini.

*Books printed for A. Bettefworth in Pater-
noster-Row.*

OVIL's Tristia, containing five Books of Mournful Elegies, which he sweetly compos'd in the midst of his Adversity, while he lived in *Tomos*, a City of *Pontus* where he died, after seven Years Banishment from *Rome*. Newly translated into English by T. P.

The *London Spelling Book*, being a more easy and regular Method of teaching to Spell, Read, and Write true English. By *John Urmston*, late School-Master at *Kington*. The Thirteenth Edition, corrected by the Author; with such useful Additions and Alterations, that a Child may be taught to read *English* perfectly by the Book alone, without the unnecessary Charge of other Books.

Exercitia Latina, or Latin for *Garratson's English Exercises*, for School Boys to translate Syntactically with the Declension, Gender, Genitive Case of Noun-Substantives, Termination of Adjectives and Participles, Declension of Pronouns, Conjugation, Tenses, Tense &c. of Verbs; and other Requisites for the more ready translating *English* and *Latin*; whereby that useful Book is still more advantageously accommodated to the Benefit of Youth than any Thing of this Nature extant. By *N Bailey*, School-Master. The Third Edition corrected and improved.

The *London Vocabulary, English and Latin*, put into a new Method proper to acquaint the Learner with Things as well as pure *Latin Words*. Adorn'd with Twenty Six Pictures. For the Use of Schools. The fourth Edition with Additions. By *J Greenwood*, Author of the *Eng Grammar*, and now keeps a Boarding-School at *W. offord* in *Essex*.

An Introduction to the making of *Latin*, comprising after an easy, compendious Method, the Substance of the *Latin Syntax*. With proper English Examples, most of them Translations from the *Classick Authors*, in one Column, and the *Latin Words* in another. For the Use of Grammar Schools. By *J. Clarke*, Master of a Private School in *York*.

F I N I S .

BASQUE NEW TESTAMENT.

The Morning Post. October 25, 1915.

KEYS TO THE BASKISH VERB IN LEIZARRAGA'S
NEW TESTAMENT, A.D. 1571. By E. S. Dodgson. London: Humphrey Milford. Oxford:
Clarendon Press. 30s. net.

Basque scholars in England are comparatively few. ~~The ablest of them, Mr. Wentworth Webster, died in 1907.~~ His only son, Lieutenant Erwin Wentworth Webster, Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford, ~~who has a thorough knowledge of Basque,~~ is at the front. Mr. Dodgson will therefore naturally expect his new book to attract even less attention than might otherwise have been the case. The importance of an elaborate (600 pages) synopsis of the Basque New Testament by a thoroughly competent Basque scholar will be readily understood. Its value is permanent and will grow with time. But it should not be left to time to show that this book has also its immediate practical use. To those who wish to know a little Basque, or who know a little and wish to know more, it will be invaluable. The Basques themselves do not read the New Testament, being the most uncompromising Roman Catholics in France, men full of character and faith. * But Englishmen accustomed to winter at Biarritz or St. Jean de Luz and already acquainted with the beautiful Basque country and its fine inhabitants (who have been showing in Flanders of what stuff they are made) will be glad to know something more of their language. Basque is a wrecked survival from a dim past, and the barnacles clinging to it from other languages are many. Leizarraga himself, who dedicated his translation of the New Testament to the Queen of Navarre in 1571, was unhappily no purist. On the first page of Mr. Dodgson's analytical synopsis occur the words *charitatea*, *benignitatea*, *screritatea*, *leguca* (law), *capitaina* (captain), *gende* (Fr. *gens*. Sp. *gente*). But even the Basque for a word so concrete as "mill" (*errota*) is really derived from Latin (*rota*), as Mr. Dodgson shows in one of his interesting notes. (This treatment of the initial "r" is common in Basque, as *array* (= Fr. *raye*) or *errege*, which = *king* not "heretic," as Portuguese *erege*, *heretico*.)

document
Basque
y. require
the y. or
a new
statement!

the Basque *gorputza*, *gorphutza*, *gorphuntza* is but the Latin *corpus*, and *arrotz*, "foreign," "strange," may be derived, Mr. Dodgson thinks, from Gr. *αλλος*. A certain number of Basque words, mostly denoting common objects, have come down almost unchanged since before any of the Romance languages existed, but it is in the verb, with its marvellous gigantic structure, that the original Basque forms chiefly survive. In bringing together and examining 1,673 forms of the Basque verb, Mr. Dodgson has therefore done valuable service and has earned the thanks of philologists. This is indeed a *liburu ederra* and is undisguisedly polyglot. (The title even is written in three languages.) The forms "Bask" and "Baskish" are Mr. Dodgson's, and are not intended to be substituted for the more common and satisfactory "Basque." They are merely instances of a spelling which rejoices in such forms as "epistol" and "forane"—not to speak of "sinny" and "infallid"—and complicates instead of simplifying. They are like those abbreviations for which life is not long enough, entailing remembrance both of the word and its abbreviation. *Aubrey F. E. Bell.* *He has, as I*
scarcely not studied the evolution of the English tongue

A REMARKABLE CASE AT

ST. WINIFRIDE'S WELL

The Liverpool Echo, April 17, 1915.

A remarkable cure has taken place at the famous shrine of St. Winifride at Holywell, the recipient of the cure being a middle-aged man named Patrick O'Neill, of 65, Hadfield-street, Old Trafford, Manchester.

O'Neill stated that on January 14, 1914, while at work as a steverore a large and heavy box fell on to his legs, causing very serious injuries. He was taken to a hospital, and remained there some time, but was not restored to health. Afterwards he had to take to crutches, which he had used ever since, and on which he came to Holywell.

He was carried by the attendant into the large bath, and he states that while uttering prayers the power of speech suddenly failed him, and at the same time he felt the power of walking returning. Upon coming out of the bath he was able to walk to the dressing cabin, and when dressed he walked up the hill to the Hospice, where he is lodging, leaving his crutches behind him.

Afterwards he walked freely about the town. He intends to remain another week and to bathe in the well daily.

JOTTINGS FOR WORDBOOKS.

To the Editor of the *Hampshire Chronicle*.

SIR,—“The Levee. A Farce” (London: 1741), is attributed at the British Museum to J. Kelly; and the Bodleian Library possesses it. It is interesting for its allusion to Cervantes, and in three places to his Don Quixote, and for its specimens of conversation in dialect. The following extracts might serve to extend some future Dictionary of the English language:—

ADSO. Page 27...to the Countess of —adso, I forgot her name,

BESIR. 22. Waunds! I was never so besir'd and complemented in aw my Loif before.

BY'R LADY, 20 & 22.

CASTS-OFF. 7. Wou'd you marry one of his Casts-off,...?

HAW. 21..., for the Squoire of our Haw, told Lord Upstart so at our Election, and biden remember his Grandfather,

LAUD (? for Lord!) 27. Laud, Laud, what a Cluster of Diamonds she has about her!

MACKIN. 2. Ha!—by th' mess—no—nay by th' mackins, ay—. 20..., just for aw the World like a Churn-Stick by the mackin; 21. Nay, by th' mackins, that is true,

MODISHLY. 12. However modishly I may talk,

OF—FOR. 26. We had not seen one another of two Years.

STRUCKEN=STRUCK HIM. 21..., I believe Squoire wou'd a strucken. (cf. “biden” above).

SWIMMINGLY. 21. ..., no Wonder troth they go so swimmingly with you.

TALKEND. 20. ..., and talken'd mighty familiarly to you.

TRAPAN. TREPAN=ENTRAP. 39 Oh that the little Villains, who trapan'd me, were now in my Reach. 41...my being an Instrument of trepanning you into the Arms of a fine Lady of Fortune.

Yours, &c., EDWARD S. DODGSON.

Aberystwyth, August 23, 1915.

LIENIN.

To the Editor of THE OXFORD TIMES.

SIR,—On page 15 of “The Times” of October 11, 1915, you may read, in an extract from its number of the same date in 1815, the following notice: “Also Horned Cattle, at three chillings per week each, with two most excellent yards perfectly dry, and a range of lienin sufficient for the reception of two hundred head of cattle”; but the word-books do not seem to have “lienin” within their range. What does it mean, or is a misprint of a recognised word?

EDWARD S. DODGSON

October 11, 1915.

THE TRAVELS OF A JAPANESE PHILOLOGIST.

To the Editor of the "Oxford Chronicle."

SIR,—The alliance of Japan is most valuable for Great Britain during the present crisis, and the writer of the following messages on postcards has many friends in Oxford who will be glad to know how far his travels have extended, and that he is going westward to join the land of the rising sun. Therefore they are offered to your readers.

EDWARD S. DODGSON.

Lambert's Hotel, Holywell, North Wales,
September 23, 1915.

1. Rome, 8th August, 1915.—Now I know no place better than Rome. Small churches, scattered ruins, and narrow by-ways, all are within my cognizance. The day after to-morrow I fly northward, but I shall have a very busy time of it sight-seeing, as my time is limited. I'll come back here at the end of this month, so any communication will be addressed to my pension, please.—Yours sincerely, S. Ichikawa.

2. Lucerne, 20th August, 1915.—Crossing the frontier without much difficulty this time, I am now in the fairest garden of the world. Both nature and man are beautiful, compared with those of Italy, and I am very much inclined to stay long, but my boat starts for America early next month, so I must go back to Rome by the end of this month.—Yours, etc., S. Ichikawa.

3. Rome, Sept. 2, 1915.—I have received your book this morning at the General Post Office. It was just in time, for the day after to-morrow I am leaving for Naples, there to spend some days in sight-seeing. My boat leaves on the 9th for Boston. My address will be—if not in heaven, or at

the bottom of the Atlantic—the Japanese Consulate, New York. I hope you are having a much-needed rest after the stupendous work you have accomplished just now. With very many thanks for the gift of your book.—Yours sincerely, S. Ichikawa.

Literary Notices.

The County Herald, Holywell, Flintshire.

KEYS TO THE BASKISH VERB IN LEIZAR-RAGA'S NEW TESTAMENT, 1571, by E. S. Dodgson, M.A., London, 1915 (Hamphrey Milford, Oxford University Press. Price 30s.). *October 21, 1915.*

For two reasons a notice of this volume seems to claim admission into the columns of the "County Herald." For one, the distinguished author has been recently abiding in Holywell, as his letter in our issue of the 1st inst. indicated, and for the other, as has been observed by a contemporary reviewer, "Baskish is of interest to Welsh philologists by the fact that the Welsh language is supposed to be slightly allied to that of the Basks of the Spanish Peninsula, who are conjectured to have come from the shores of the Mediterranean and founded the stock of small, swarthy, dark-haired people in the British Islands before the arrival of the Celts." On this latter surmise the book should certainly commend itself to the professors of the University and Colleges of the Principality. Moreover, Mr. Dodgson, by a curious and happy coincidence, uses, as the closing line of his monumental work, the motto "O bydded i'r hen iaith barhau." As to the book itself—a bulky volume of 624 pages—it purports to be an analytical synopsis of the 1673 forms of the verb as found in the Gospel of St. John, the Book of Acts, the Epistles of St. Paul to the Romans, Corinthians, and Titus, those of St. James and St. Peter, and the Apocalypse of Leizarraga's Baskish Version of the New Testament made in 1571. Three other volumes, of which this is the fitting complement, preceded this one: "A Synopsis of the 338 Forms of the Baskish Verb used in the Epistles to the Hebrews" (1907); "An Analysis of the 703 Verbal Forms in the Gospel according to Matthew" (1910); and "A Synopsis and Parsing of the 790 Verb Signals in St. Luke's Gospel" (1912). Such contributions to grammatical science, in their analyses of ~~3504~~ forms or members of the Leizarragan Verb, are as invaluable as they are prodigious, representing, together with numerous articles in British and foreign periodicals, a stupendous amount of research, and constituting for their author a unique position amongst Baskish scholars.

The marvel is that neither they, nor any Bask, has ever attempted a work on similar exhaustive lines; this achievement was reserved for Oxford scholarship in the person of Mr. Dodgson, the only surviving Bascologist of the Anglo-Saxon race. In the behoof of the uninitiated it is well to explain that the value of Mr. Dodgson's investigations lies in his classification of the intensely difficult Baskish verb, complicated by its many forms and frequent transformation into substantives. These are amply illustrated by extracted passages from Leizarraga's version and further elucidated by foot-notes. It may be added further that Leizarraga's "Testamentu Berria" produced at the request of Jeanne d'Albret, Queen of Navarre and grandmother of our Charles the First's consort, in 1571, was the first printed Baskish book, and is deservedly regarded as a classic in that language. England possesses four out of the twenty-seven copies extant, the finest of which is owned by John Rylands' Library, Manchester, and it will be interesting to Welshmen to know that, as appears from a Manuscript in Trinity College, Dublin, this edition was known to Edward Llwyd, the well-known Welsh philologist.

in prose

By the Rev.^d J. B. McGovern, St. Stephen's Rectory,
Chorlton-on-Medlock, Manchester.

KEYS TO THE BASKISH VERB.

To the Editor of THE OXFORD TIMES.

SIR,—My bunch of "Keys to the Baskish Verb" was cast upon the waters as an aid to every person "that walketh in darkness and hath no light." It is, therefore, a joy to "find it after many days" in the literary notice of the "Oxford Times" of Friday last. Parts of what the Rev. C. T. H. Walker says of it are, like the Bishop's egg, very good. When he shall find time to carry his research a little further, he will recognise the fact that my new book was not meant to be more than its title implies: that its quotations are its own sufficient Chrestomathy for illustrating the best use of the Verb in the 16th century, when the language saw its birthday and came into literary notice. It is not a manual for "learning Baskish" as a whole, but for laying a solid foundation with that desirable intention. I have tried to reduce unto unity, under one concordance, all that a beginner needs in order to drink with discretion of that holy well, Leicarraga's New Testament, its oldest monument in prose. To have added a Chrestomathy from this and later books than that, or an "outline of Baskish Grammar," would have rendered it even more unhandy than it is with its 626 sides, however handsomely presented by the printer. Let Mr. Walker himself take up that hand-stick! Let him, too, find terms more intelligible than "Verb," and the others of which I have made use, following the example of all others who have written upon this intricate, but fascinating, subject, for grammatical purposes since the 17th century, including Prince L. L. Buonaparte, a native of England, whom he ought to have named and who loved Leicarraga. We must use the known as a guide to the unknown, and prefer simplicity. He will discover that the Baskish "Verb" is the verbiest, and most verbose, and magical, and majestic, of verbs; the word par excellence of the language; the soul of its syntax, which is the soul of any language whatsoever. Your space will not allow me to say much more in reply to him. My work was made as pithy and truthy as possible, and truthiness will compel me to add to it very soon a leaf of corrigenda, which perhaps will hardly seem necessary to careful readers. I shall be thankful to all students who assist the propaganda in favour of so attractive a tung as Heuskara.—I remain, Sir, yours truly,

October 8, 1915.

E. S. DODGSON.

Lambert's Hotel, Holywell, Flintshire.
Feast of St. Francis, 1915.



